



# Simulation of Coupled Processes of Flow, Transport, and Storage of CO<sub>2</sub> in Saline Aquifers

**Final Scientific Report** Reporting Period: 1 October 2009 – 30 September 2014

## PI: Professor Yu-Shu Wu (Colorado School of Mines)

Co-PI:

Professor Zizhong Chen (University of California, Riverside) Professors Hossein Kazemi and Xiaolong Yin (Colorado School of Mines) Drs. Karsten Pruess and Curt Oldenburg (Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory)

**Research Personnel:** 

Drs. Philip Winterfeld and Ronglei Zhang (Colorado School of Mines)

December 2014 Award Number: DE-FE0000988

**Submitting Organizations:** 

Colorado School of Mines 1500 Illinois St., Golden, CO 80401

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory 1 Cyclotron Road, Berkeley, CA 94720





## Disclaimer

This report was prepared as an account of work sponsored by an agency of the United States Government. Neither the United States Government nor any agency thereof, nor any of their employees, makes any warranty, express or implied, or assumes any legal liability or responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, or usefulness of any information, apparatus, product, or process disclosed, or represents that its use would not infringe privately owned rights. Reference herein to any specific commercial product, process, or service by trade name, trademark, manufacturer, or otherwise does not necessarily constitute or imply its endorsement, recommendation, or favoring by the United States Government or any agency thereof. The views and opinions of authors expressed herein do not necessarily state or reflect those of the United States Government or any agency thereof.

## Abstract

This report is the final scientific one for the award DE- FE0000988 entitled "Simulation of Coupled Processes of Flow, Transport, and Storage of  $CO_2$  in Saline Aquifers." The work has been divided into six tasks. In task, "Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal  $CO_2$  Flow Module," we developed a fluid property module for brine- $CO_2$  mixtures designed to handle all possible phase combinations of aqueous phase, sub-critical liquid and gaseous  $CO_2$ , supercritical  $CO_2$ , and solid salt. The thermodynamic and thermophysical properties of brine- $CO_2$  mixtures (density, viscosity, and specific enthalpy of fluid phases; partitioning of mass components among the different phases) use the same correlations as an earlier fluid property module that does not distinguish between gaseous and liquid  $CO_2$ -rich phases. We verified the fluid property module using two leakage scenarios, one that involves  $CO_2$  migration up a blind fault and subsequent accumulation in a secondary "parasitic" reservoir at shallower depth, and another investigating leakage of  $CO_2$  from a deep storage reservoir along a vertical fault zone.

In task, "Development of a Rock Mechanical Module," we developed a massively parallel reservoir simulator for modeling THM processes in porous media brine aquifers. We derived, from the fundamental equations describing deformation of porous elastic media, a momentum conservation equation relating mean stress, pressure, and temperature, and incorporated it alongside the mass and energy conservation equations from the TOUGH2 formulation, the starting point for the simulator. In addition, rock properties, namely permeability and porosity, are functions of effective stress and other variables that are obtained from the literature. We verified the simulator formulation and numerical implementation using analytical solutions and example problems from the literature. For the former, we matched a one-dimensional consolidation problem and a two-dimensional simulation of the Mandel-Cryer effect. For the latter, we obtained a good match of temperature and gas saturation profiles, and surface uplift, after injection of hot fluid into a model of a caldera structure.

In task, "Incorporation of Geochemical Reactions of Selected Important Species," we developed a novel mathematical model of THMC processes in porous and fractured saline aquifers, simulating geo-chemical reactions associated with  $CO_2$  sequestration in saline aquifers. Two computational frameworks, sequentially coupled and fully coupled, were used to simulate the reactions and transport. We verified capabilities of the THMC model to treat complex THMC processes during  $CO_2$  sequestration by analytical solutions and we constructed reactive transport models to analyze the THMC process quantitatively. Three of these are 1D reactive transport under chemical equilibrium, a batch reaction model with equilibrium chemical reactions, and a THMC model with  $CO_2$  dissolution.

In task "Study of Instability in  $CO_2$  Dissolution-Diffusion-Convection Processes," We reviewed literature related to the study of density driven convective flows and on the instability of  $CO_2$ dissolution-diffusion-convection processes. We ran simulations that model the density-driven flow instability that would occur during  $CO_2$  sequestration.  $CO_2$  diffused through the top of the system and dissolved in the aqueous phase there, increasing its density. Density fingers formed along the top boundary, and coalesced into a few prominent ones, causing convective flow that forced the fluid to the system bottom. These simulations were in two and three dimensions. We ran additional simulations of convective mixing with density contrast caused by variable dissolved  $CO_2$  concentration in saline water, modeled after laboratory experiments in which supercritical  $CO_2$  was circulated in the headspace above a brine saturated packed sand in a pressure vessel. As  $CO_2$  dissolved into the upper part of the saturated sand, liquid phase density increases causing instability and setting off convective mixing. We obtained good agreement with the laboratory experiments, which were characterized by finger development and associated mixing of dissolved  $CO_2$  into the system. We then varied a wide range of parameters and conceptual models in order to analyze the possibility of convective mixing under different conditions, such as various boundary conditions, and chemical reaction conditions. The  $CO_2$ fingers from different simulations showed great differences as time progressed, caused by permeability heterogeneity. The early time diffusive phenomenon was captured by fine grid resolution, and the permeability heterogeneity affected the pattern of the  $CO_2$  fingers. In addition, the fingers from three-dimensional simulations tended to be larger and flatter than the two-dimensional ones.

In task "Implementation of Efficient Parallel Computing Technologies," we made enhancements and modifications to our code in order to substantially increase the grid size that could be run. We installed and ran it on various platforms, including a multi-core PC and a cluster, and verified the numerical implementation and parallel code using an example problem from the literature. This problem, with a grid size of sixty million, utilized the cluster's entire memory and all of its processors.

In task "Implementation of General Fracture Conceptual Models," we used the MINC approach, a generalization of the double-porosity concept, to model flow through porous and fractured media. In this approach, flow within the matrix is described by subdividing the matrix into nested volumes, with flow occurring between adjacent nested matrix volumes as well as between the fractures and the outer matrix volume. We generalized Hooke's law to a thermo-multiporoelastic media, and derived from the fundamental equations describing deformation of porous and fractured elastic media a momentum conservation equation for thermo-multiporoelastic media. This equation is a generalization to multi-poroelastic media of the one derived in Task 3.0 for single porosity media. We describe two simulations to provide model verification and application examples. The first, one-dimensional consolidation of a double-porosity medium, is compared to an analytical solution. The second is a match of published results from the literature, a simulation of  $CO_2$  injection into hypothetical aquifer-caprock systems.

## Table of Contents

Disclaimer	1
Abstract	2
Table of Contents	4
List of Figures	6
List of Tables	10
Introduction	12
Task 2.0: Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO2 Flow Module         Literature Survey	16 16
Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO <sub>2</sub> Flow Module	17
Verification of Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO <sub>2</sub> Flow Module	21
1) CO <sub>2</sub> Leakage from a Secondary Accumulation at Shallow Depth	21
2) CO <sub>2</sub> Discharge from a Deep Fault Zone	23
Integration of ECO2M into the iTOUGH2 Simulation-Optimization Framework	29
Summary and Conclusions	29
Task 3.0: Development of a rock mechanical module Introduction	30 30
TOUGH2-CSM Single-Porosity Geomechanical Equations	30
TOUGH2-CSM Single-Porosity Conservation Equations	32
Discretization of Single-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM Conservation Equations	34
Solution of TOUGH2-CSM Conservation Equations	38
Geomechanical Boundary Conditions	39
Rock Property Correlations	39
Verification and Application Examples for Single-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM	42
1) One-Dimensional Consolidation	42
2) Mandel-Cryer Effect	45
3) Ground Deformation and Heat Flow in a Caldera Structure	47
Summary and Conclusions	54
Task 4.0: Incorporation of Geochemical Reactions of Selected Important Species Literature Survey of Brine and Rock Composition, Reaction Equilibria, and Reaction Rates	55 55
Reactive Transport Modeling of Calcite Dissolution	78
Results and discussion	80
Assessment of porosity and permeability changes associated with dissolution/precipitation	83
Background of Geochemical Reaction Modeling Study	83

Geochemical Reaction Modeling Study for White Rim formation, Colorado Plate Utah	au, Central
Geochemical Reaction Modeling Study for Gulf Coast Sediments, U. S	
THMC Mathematical Model	102
Fully Coupled Solution Method for THMC Simulator	103
Sequentially Coupled Solution Method for THMC Simulator	
Verification and Validation of THMC Simulator	105
1D Reactive Transport with Equilibrium Chemical Reaction	105
Applications in CO2 Geo-sequestration	108
Batch Reaction with Equilibrium Chemical Reactions	108
THMC Model with CO2 Dissolution	110
Summary and Conclusions	
Task 5.0:       Study of Instability of CO2 Dissolution-Diffusion-Convection Processes         Literature Survey	
Theoretical and Numerical Characterization of the Instability	123
Summary and Conclusions	
Task 6.0: Implementation of Efficient Parallel Computing Technologies         The TOUGH2-CSM code	163 163
TOUGH2-CSM Grid Generation	
TOUGH2-CSM Code Platforms	
TOUGH2-CSM Parallel Code Verification	
1) In Salah Gas Project	
Summary and Conclusions	
Task 7.0: Implementation of General Fracture Conceptual Models         Introduction	171 171
TOUGH2-CSM Multiple-Porosity Geomechanical Equations	173
Discretization of Multiple-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM Conservation Equations	174
Verification and Application Examples for Multiple-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM	175
1) One-Dimensional Consolidation of Double-Porosity Medium	
2) CO <sub>2</sub> Sequestration in an Aquifer-Caprock System	
Summary and Conclusions	
References Appendix A: Publications/Presentations Generated from this Research Appendix B: Participating Researchers/Students	

# **List of Figures**

Figure 2.1. Possible phase combinations in the system water- $CO_2$ . The phase designations are (a) - aqueous, (l) - liquid $CO_2$ , (g) - gaseous $CO_2$ . Separate liquid and gas phases exist only at
subcritical conditions
Figure 2.2. T,P-diagram of a typical geothermal-hydrostatic profile. The CO <sub>2</sub> saturation line is also shown, as is a profile that corresponds to a pressure increase of $\Delta P = 10$ bar at 1500 m depth
Figure 2.3. Conceptual sketch of a leakage scenario (left) and actual dimensions of the flow system (right)
Figure 2.4. $CO_2$ outflow at the land surface per unit length of the fault zone, comparing our new
TOUGH2/ECO2M model with earlier results
Figure 2.5 Typical temperature and pressure profiles in terrestrial crust 24
Figure 2.6. $TP$ -diagram of a typical geothermal-hydrostatic profile. The CO <sub>2</sub> saturation line is
also shown, as is a profile that corresponds to a pressure increase of $\Delta P = 10$ bar at 1500 m depth
Figure 2.7 Saturation and temperature profiles at different times 26
Figure 2.8. Time dependence of water and $CO_2$ outflow at the land surface and temperatures at
$t_{\rm WO}$ different denths $28$
Figure 2.9 Water and CO <sub>2</sub> fluxes as shown in Figure 2.8 with the heavy superposed lines
indicating the top and bottom of three-phase conditions respectively 28
Figure 2.10 Temperature-pressure profiles at different times 28
Figure 3.1 Parameter definitions for the integral finite difference method, adapted from Pruess <i>et</i>
<i>al.</i> (1999)
Figure 3.2. Simulated pressure (markers) and analytical (solid lines) versus time at 100 m, 500
m, and 900 m for one-dimensional consolidation problem
Figure 3.3. Comparison Mandel-Cryer effect analytical solution to simulation for pore pressure
located at system center
Figure 3.4. Temperature profile after 4000 years injection from TOUGH2-CSM
Figure 3.5. Temperature profile after 4000 years injection, adapted from Todesco et al. (2003).49
Figure 3.6. CO <sub>2</sub> saturation profile after 4000 years injection from TOUGH2-CSM50
Figure 3.7. CO <sub>2</sub> saturation profile after 4000 years injection, adapted from Todesco <i>et al.</i> (2003)
Figure 3.8. Surface uplift after two years of higher injection rates (10 times) from TOUGH2-CSM
Figure 3.9. Surface uplift after two years of higher injection rates (10 times), adapted from
Todesco <i>et al.</i> (2003)
Figure 4.1 Simplified conceptual model for the CO <sub>2</sub> injection problem80
Figure 4.2a. pH values at different times for 1-D radial CO <sub>2</sub> injection problem80
Figure 4.2b. Calcite change in abundance at different times for 1-D radial CO <sub>2</sub> injection problem
(negative values indicate dissolution)
Figure 4.3: Porosity change at different times for 1-D radial CO <sub>2</sub> injection problem81
Figure 4.4: Calcium ion concentrations at different times for 1-D radial CO <sub>2</sub> injection problem 82
Figure 4.5: Bicarbonate radical concentrations at different times for 1-D CO <sub>2</sub> injection problem

Figure 4.6. Geological condition on the cross-section beneath the Hunter Power Plant, Central
Utah. (White et al., 2005)
Figure 4.7. Definition of parameters used to define capillary pressure functions. $P_0=3.92\times10^7$ ,
$P_1=1.10\times10^5$ , $P_2=3.90\times10^3$ , $S_1=0.05$ and $S_1=1.00$ . (White <i>et al.</i> , 2005)
Figure 4.8. 2D Mesh structure used for reactive transport modeling
Figure 4.9. Spatial distribution of CO <sub>2</sub> gas saturation after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years
Figure 4.10. Spatial distribution of bicarbonate concentration (mol/kg formation water) due to
the dissolution of CO <sub>2</sub> gas after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years
Figure 4.11. Spatial distribution of pH value due to the dissolution of $CO_2$ gas or mineral
composition after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years
Figure 4.12. Spatial distribution of calcite volume fraction change due to increasing acidity after
50, 50, 100 and 1000 years (negative means dissolution)
Na smootite after 30 and 1000 years
Figure 4.14 Spatial distribution of parasity due to the CO <sub>2</sub> injection after 20, 50, 100 and 1000
rigure 4.14. Spanar distribution of polosity due to the CO <sub>2</sub> hijection after 50, 50, 100 and 1000
Figure 4.15 Spatial distribution of permeability due to the CO <sub>2</sub> injection after 30, 50, 100 and
1000 years $93$
Figure 4.16 Conceptual model for the $CO_2$ injection into a sandstone formation 96
Figure 4.17 Spatial distribution of CO <sub>2</sub> gas saturation after 40, 500 and 1000 years 97
Figure 4.18 Spatial distribution of bicarbonate concentration (mol/kg water) due to the
dissolution of $CO_2$ gas after 40, 500 and 1000 years 98
Figure 4.19 Spatial distribution of pH value due to the dissolution of CO <sub>2</sub> gas or mineral
composition after 40, 500 and 1000 years
Figure 4.20. Spatial distribution of oligoclase volume fraction change due to increasing acidity
after 500 and 1000 years (negative means dissolution)
Figure 4.21. Spatial distribution of porosity due to the CO <sub>2</sub> injection after 40, 500 and 1000 years
Figure 4.22. Volume distribution of $CO_2$ sequestrated as mineral in the formation rock (kg/m <sup>3</sup>
mineral medium) due to CO <sub>2</sub> injection after 500 and 1000 years
Figure 4.23. Concentration profiles for two species A and B in a problem involving dissolution
of a mineral AB(s) under conditions of local equilibrium
Figure 4.24. Pressure evolution subjected to supercritical CO <sub>2</sub> injection
Figure 4.25. CO <sub>2</sub> gas saturation evolution subjected to supercritical CO <sub>2</sub> injection
Figure 4.26. Temperature evolution subjected to low temperature supercritical CO <sub>2</sub> injection114
Figure 4.27. Mean stress evolution subjected to low temperature supercritical CO <sub>2</sub> injection115
Figure 4.28. Dissolved concentration of $CO_2(g)$ in aqueous phase for nonisothermal case116
Figure 4.29. Concentration of bicarbonate ion subjected to supercritical CO <sub>2</sub> injection
Figure 5.1. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 8.33 days for two-dimensional simulation
Figure 5.2. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 16.67 days for two-dimensional simulation
Figure 5.3. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 20.83 days for two-dimensional simulation
Figure 5.4. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 1157 days for three-dimensional simulation
Figure 5.5. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 2315 days for three-dimensional simulation
Figure 5.6. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 3472 days for three-dimensional simulation
Figure 5.7. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 10E6 seconds for flow instability simulation
Figure 5.8. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 20E6 seconds for flow instability simulation

Figure 5.9. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 30E6 seconds for flow instability simulation	134
Figure 5.10. CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 30E6 seconds for flow instability simulation	135
Figure 5.11. Horizontally averaged CO <sub>2</sub> mass fraction versus depth for various times	137
Figure 5.12. Development of fingers in a Hele-Shaw cell with 0.7 mm aperture. CO <sub>2</sub> dissolv	ves in
water increasing the its density and initiating convective fingering	139
Figure 5.13. Convective instability that developed after the first few minutes of the num	erical
experiment.	141
Figure 5.14. Laboratory experiment, characterized by finger development and associated m	iixing
of dissolved $CO_2$ into the system	142
Figure 5.15. Spatial distribution of mass fraction and vertical mass fraction difference of aqu	ueous
$CO_2$ with different number of grid cells in z direction: a and b with 200 grid cells; c and d	with
400 grid cells; e and f with 500 grid cells; g and h with 600 grid cells; 1 and 1 with 800 grid	cells.
a, c, e, g, and i are for mass fraction of aqueous $CO_2$ after 20 years' sequestration; b, d, f,	and j
are for vertical mass fraction difference of aqueous CO <sub>2</sub> after 20 years' sequestration	147
Figure 5.16. Spatial distribution of dissolved $CO_2$ after six different simulation times for ra	ndom
number seed of 0.6 to generate permeability heterogeneity	149
Figure 5.17. Spatial distribution of dissolved $CO_2$ after six different simulation times for ra	ndom
number seed of 0.7 to generate permeability heterogeneity	151
Figure 5.18. Spatial distribution of dissolved $CO_2$ after six different simulation times for ra	ndom
number seed of 0.8 to generate permeability heterogeneity	152
Figure 5.19. Spatial distribution of dissolved $CO_2$ after six different simulation times for ra	ndom
number seed of 0.9 to generate permeability heterogeneity	153
Figure 5.20. 3D views of dissolved $CO_2$ after four different simulation times, in which a,	, c, e,
and g are non-transparent to show the fingers of aqueous $CO_2$ in the outside walls of the m	iodel,
b, d, t and h are transparent to show iso-fraction surface inside the model (seed=0.8)	155
Figure 5.21. 3D views of dissolved $CO_2$ after four different simulation times, in which a,	, c, e,
and g are non-transparent to show the fingers of aqueous $CO_2$ in the outside walls of the m	iodel,
b, d, f and h are transparent to show iso-fraction surface inside the model (seed= $0.9$ )	157
Figure 5.22. Views from below show flat characteristic of the fingers (seed =0.8)	158
Figure 5.23. Views from below snow flat characteristic of the fingers (seed =0.9)	139
Figure 5.24. 2D spatial distribution of dissolved $CO_2$ after four different simulation time	s at a
slice inside the 3D model, the slice is located at 10m in the x direction as a yz-plane (seed	.=0.8)
Figure 5.25, 2D spatial distribution of dissolved CO <sub>2</sub> after four different simulation time	s at a
slice inside the 3D model, the slice is located at 10m in the x direction as a vz-plane (seed	=0.9)
	161
Figure 6.1. Example grid partitioning of fourteen grid blocks (vertices) between three proce	essors
(numbered 0, 1, and 2). Partition boundaries are shown by the thicker lines and grid	block
connections are shown by the thinner lines	165
Figure 6.2. Surface uplift, m, for TOUGH2-CSM In Salah CO <sub>2</sub> injection simulation; injection	ection
well shown by thick horizontal line at origin	169
Figure 7.1. Idealized double porosity model of a fractured reservoir showing fractures and n	natrix
blocks, adapted from Pruess et al. (1999)	172
Figure 7.2. Idealized MINC grid showing fractures and nested matrix volumes, adapted	from
Pruess et al. (1999)	172

Figure 7.3. Comparison of fracture pressure analytical solution (solid lines) to simulation	(points)
for one-dimensional consolidation of double-porosity column	177
Figure 7.4. CO <sub>2</sub> saturation profile at ten years for TOUGH2-CSM simulation	179
Figure 7.5. Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) CO <sub>2</sub> saturation	
Figure 7.6. TOUGH2-CSM surface uplift at 1, 3, and 10 years	182
Figure 7.7. Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) surface uplift	
Figure 7.8 TOUGH2-CSM CO <sub>2</sub> saturation profile at 10 years with fracture in caprock	
Figure 7.9 Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) CO <sub>2</sub> saturation profile with fracture in caprock	

## List of Tables

Table 2.1. Primary thermodynamic variables used for multiphase mixtures of brine and CO2	.19
Table 3.1. Input parameters for one-dimensional consolidation problem	.43
Table 3.2. Rock properties for Mandel-Cryer effect simulation	.45
Table 3.3. Rock properties for Phlegrean Fields caldera	.47
Table 4.1. Survey of CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration projects in the U.S. and worldwide	.55
Table 4.2. Summary of geochemical reaction software for worldwide CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration sites	.64
Table 4.3. Comparisons of geochemical reaction modeling software	.65
Table 4.4. Category of rock forming minerals with similar crystal structures	.66
Table 4.5. Carbon dioxide sequestration potential of major rock forming minerals	.66
Table 4.6. List of initial mineral volume fractions and potential secondary mineral for t	the
glauconitic sandstone	.68
Table 4.7 List of initial mineral volume fractions and potential secondary mineral phases	for
Gulf Coast sediments	.69
Table 4.8. Primary and secondary rock mineral composition used in the modeling	.70
Table 4.9 Initial total dissolved component concentrations derived from baseline fluid samples	70
Table 4.10. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation	.71
Table 4.11. The mineral assemblages of the Rose Run Formation	.72
Table 4.12. Rate constants for the minerals used in the reactive transport simulations	.72
Table 4.13. Initial Brine composition of Rose Run Sandstone	.72
Table 4.14. Mineral compositions of the three samples from sandstone reservoirs of the F	Rio
Bonito Formation	.73
Table 4.15. The kinetic parameters used in the modeling	.73
Table 4.16. Mineralogical composition of the Nordland Shale and the amounts introduced in t	the
model	.74
Table 4.17. Initial composition of the formation water in the cap rock	.74
Table 4.18. Molar volumes, specific surface areas and kinetic rate parameters at 37 °C of t	the
minerals	.75
Table 4.19. Dogger aquifer mineralogy and list of potential secondary minerals present in t	the
reservoir	.75
Table 4.20. Chemical composition of water from the Dogger aquifer in the region	of
Fontainebleau	.76
Table 4.21. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation	.76
Table 4.22. Mineralogical composition of the Marly and Vuggy reservoirs	.77
Table 4.23. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation	.77
Table 4.24. List of initial mineral volume fractions and possible secondary mineral phases	.78
Table 4.25. Hydrogeologic and geochemical parameters for the 1-D radial fluid flow problem	.79
Table 4.26. Initial mineral volume fractions and potential secondary mineral phases	.85
Table 4.27. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation	.86
Table 4.28. Initial equilibrium concentration of water species (in mol/kg)	.87
Table 4.29. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation	.94
Table 4.30. Initial equilibrium concentration of water species (in mol/kg)	.95
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

Table 4.31: Initial parameters for 1D Reactive Transport with Equilibrium Chemical React	ion
	106
Table 4.32. Equilibrium constants for chemical reactions in the batch system	109
Table 4.33. Comparison between the fully coupled simulator and TOUGHREACT	110
Table 4.34. Initial parameters for the THMC Model	111
Table 6.1. Geological layer properties for In Salah CO <sub>2</sub> injection	167
Table 6.2. Layer thicknesses for In Salah simulation	168
Table 7.1. Number of conservation equations for single-porosity and multi-porosity cases	175
Table 7.2. Rock properties for one-dimensional consolidation of double-porosity column	176
Table 7.3. Rock properties for aquifer-caprock system	178

## **Executive Summary**

This report is the final scientific one for the award DE- FE0000988 entitled "Simulation of Coupled Processes of Flow, Transport, and Storage of  $CO_2$  in Saline Aquifers." The work has been divided into six tasks and the progress in each is outlined below.

### Task 2.0: Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO<sub>2</sub> Flow Module

Numerical simulation of  $CO_2$  sequestration remains in the developmental stage, with relatively few studies. Chemical reactions are absent from many of these simulations, and much of the work in the area of reaction modeling is proprietary or in the developmental stage. We present a brief overview of published work in  $CO_2$  sequestration modeling.

For mixtures of  $CO_2$  and brine there are seven possible phase combinations, and fourteen when solid salt is included. The fluid property module for brine- $CO_2$  mixtures, called ECO2M, is designed to handle all possible phase combinations of aqueous phase, sub-critical liquid and gaseous  $CO_2$ , supercritical  $CO_2$ , and solid salt. The thermodynamic and thermophysical properties of brine- $CO_2$  mixtures (density, viscosity, and specific enthalpy of fluid phases; partitioning of mass components among the different phases) use the same correlations as in the ECO2N fluid property module, an earlier TOUGH2 one, that does not distinguish between gaseous and liquid  $CO_2$ -rich phases.

We verified the fluid property module using a previously investigated leakage scenario that involves  $CO_2$  migration up a blind fault and subsequent accumulation in a secondary "parasitic" reservoir at shallower depth, and an investigation of leakage  $CO_2$  from a deep storage reservoir along a vertical fault zone.

### Task 3.0: Development of a Rock Mechanical Module

We developed a massively parallel reservoir simulator, called TOUGH2-CSM, for modeling THM processes in porous media brine aquifers. We derived, from the fundamental equations describing deformation of porous elastic media, a momentum conservation equation relating mean stress, pressure, and temperature, and incorporated it alongside the mass and energy conservation equations from the TOUGH2 formulation. In addition, rock properties, namely permeability and porosity, are functions of effective stress and other variables that are obtained from the literature. The starting point for our simulator is the massively parallel TOUGH2-MP code.

We verified the simulator formulation and numerical implementation using analytical solutions and example problems from the literature. For the former, we matched a one-dimensional consolidation problem and a two-dimensional simulation of the Mandel-Cryer effect. For the latter, we compared our results to those from two coupled computer codes, one that simulates fluid flow and heat transport, and the other that simulates rock deformation. We obtained a good match of temperature and gas saturation profiles and surface uplift after injection of a hot fluid into a model of a caldera structure.

### Task 4.0: Incorporation of Geochemical Reactions of Selected Important Species

We developed a novel mathematical model for simulation of THMC processes in porous and fractured saline aquifers. The novel frameworks were designed to keep a generalized computational structure, which can be easily applied for the numerical simulation of other THMC processes. In this case, we are simulating geo-chemical reactions associated with  $CO_2$  sequestration in saline aquifers. Two computational frameworks, sequentially coupled and fully coupled, were used to simulate the reactions and transport.

We verified capabilities of the THMC model to treat complex THMC processes during  $CO_2$  sequestration by analytical solutions and we constructed reactive transport models to analyze the THMC process quantitatively. We present here one of these analytical solutions, 1D reactive transport under chemical equilibrium. We also present here two of the reactive transport models, a batch reaction model with equilibrium chemical reactions and a THMC model with  $CO_2$  dissolution.

#### Task 5.0: Study of Instability in CO<sub>2</sub> Dissolution-Diffusion-Convection Processes

We reviewed literature related to the study of density driven convective flows and on the instability of  $CO_2$  dissolution-diffusion-convection processes. We used our modified TOUGH2-MP to run simulations that model the density-driven flow instability that would occur during  $CO_2$  sequestration.  $CO_2$  diffused through the top of the system and dissolved in the aqueous phase there, increasing its density. Density fingers formed along the top boundary, and coalesced into a few prominent ones, causing convective flow that forced the fluid to the system bottom. These simulations were in two and three dimensions.

We ran additional simulations of convective mixing with density contrast caused by variable dissolved  $CO_2$  concentration in saline water, modeled after laboratory experiments in which supercritical  $CO_2$  was circulated in the headspace above a brine saturated packed sand in a pressure vessel. As  $CO_2$  dissolves into the upper part of the saturated sand, liquid phase density increases causing instability and setting off convective mixing. We obtained good agreement with the laboratory experiments, which were characterized by finger development and associated mixing of dissolved  $CO_2$  into the system. We then varied a wide range of parameters and conceptual models in order to analyze the possibility of convective mixing under different conditions, such as various boundary conditions, and chemical reaction conditions. The  $CO_2$  fingers from different simulations showed great differences as time progressed, caused by permeability heterogeneity. The early time diffusive phenomenon was captured by fine grid resolution, the fingers from three-dimensional simulations tended to be larger and flatter than the two-dimensional ones.

#### Task 6.0: Implementation of Efficient Parallel Computing Technologies

We developed a massively parallel reservoir simulator, called TOUGH2-CSM, for modeling THM processes in fractured and porous media brine aquifers. The starting point for our simulator is the massively parallel TOUGH2-MP code. We made enhancements and modifications to the original code in order to substantially increase the grid size that could be run. We installed and ran TOUGH2-CSM on various platforms, including a multi-core PC and a cluster.

We verified the numerical implementation and parallel code using an example problem from the literature. This problem, with a grid size of sixty million, utilized the cluster's entire memory and all of its processors. We obtained a good match of surface uplift after three years of  $CO_2$  injection into the water leg of a depleting gas field.

### Task 7.0: Implementation of General Fracture Conceptual Models

We use the MINC approach, a generalization of the double-porosity concept, to enable TOUGH2-CSM to model flow through porous and fractured media. In this approach, flow within the matrix is described by subdividing the matrix into nested volumes, with flow occurring between adjacent nested matrix volumes as well as between the fractures and the outer matrix volume. Flow within the matrix is one-dimensional and transient and the MINC approach reduces to the double-porosity one if there is only one matrix subdivision.

We generalize Hooke's law to a thermo-multi-poroelastic medium, and derive from the fundamental equations describing deformation of porous and fractured elastic media a momentum conservation equation for thermo-multi-poroelastic media that is incorporated into TOUGH2-CSM. This equation is a generalization to multi-poroelastic media of the one derived in Task 3.0 for single porosity media.

We describe two simulations to provide model verification and application examples. The first, one-dimensional consolidation of a double-porosity medium, is compared to an analytical solution. The second is a match of published results from the literature, a simulation of  $CO_2$  injection into hypothetical aquifer-caprock systems.

## Introduction

This report is the final scientific one for the award DE- FE0000988 entitled "Simulation of Coupled Processes of Flow, Transport, and Storage of  $CO_2$  in Saline Aquifers." The work has been divided into tasks and these tasks are:

Task 2.0: Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO<sub>2</sub> Flow Module
Task 3.0: Development of a Rock Mechanical Module
Task 4.0: Incorporation of Geochemical Reactions of Selected Important Species
Task 5.0: Study of Instability in CO<sub>2</sub> Dissolution-Diffusion-Convection Processes
Task 6.0: Implementation of Efficient Parallel Computing Technologies
Task 7.0: Implementation of General Fracture Conceptual Models

The progress for each of the above tasks is described in the following sections.

# Task 2.0: Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO<sub>2</sub> Flow Module

### **Literature Survey**

Numerical simulation of  $CO_2$  sequestration remains in the developmental stage, with relatively few studies. Chemical reactions are absent from many of these simulations, and much of the work in the area of reaction modeling is proprietary or in the developmental stage. A brief overview of published work in  $CO_2$  sequestration modeling is provided in this section.

An early example of a non-reactive transport simulation (van der Meer, 1993) is  $CO_2$  sequestration in a circular anticlinal stratigraphic trap. In a subsequent study (Holt *et al.*, 1993), ECLIPSE 100, a black oil reservoir simulator, was modified to include the solubility of  $CO_2$  in water and empirical relative permeability relations between liquid and gas phases. Their findings indicated that injection rate and absolute permeability were the dominant factors influencing injected  $CO_2$  migration. van der Meer (1995) addressed  $CO_2$  injection into a two-dimensional, quasi-infinite aquifer and concluded it was possible to sequester significant amounts of  $CO_2$  in the subsurface, but capturing the combined effects of viscous fingering and gravity segregation would require three dimensional modeling.

Lindeberg (1995) described simulations of  $CO_2$  injection at 8,000 meters depth in a horizontally finite aquifer. He concluded that  $CO_2$  storage was feasible beneath horizontal seals, provided that injection locations were sufficiently deep.

A general approach to evaluating sedimentary basins for CO<sub>2</sub> disposal was presented by Bachu et al. (1994). It was exemplified by the Alberta Basin in western Canada, where a wealth of geological and hydrogeological data from more than 150,000 wells was available to allow for a good estimate of the potential for long-term CO<sub>2</sub> storage there. Besides stratigraphic trapping, CO<sub>2</sub> interactions with aquifer water and rocks and CO<sub>2</sub> transport in miscible and immiscible phases were two additional mechanisms cited for the capture and long-term retention of CO<sub>2</sub> in the subsurface. Law and Bachu (1996) used the reservoir simulator STARS to simulate CO<sub>2</sub> injection into a sedimentary basin for 30 years. This multidimensional, multi-component model allowed CO<sub>2</sub> to partition between a liquid and a gaseous phase. They concluded that permeability and injection pressure are important factors effecting CO<sub>2</sub> storage potential. Bachu (2003) developed a method for estimating an upper limit to the CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration capacity in solution for an aquifer and applied it to the Viking aquifer in the Alberta Basin in western Canada. Formation water analyses performed at laboratory conditions are brought to in situ conditions using a geochemical speciation model to account for dissolved gasses that are lost from the water sample. To account for the decrease in CO<sub>2</sub> solubility with increasing water salinity, the maximum CO<sub>2</sub> content in formation water is calculated by applying an empirical correction to the CO<sub>2</sub> content at saturation in pure water. The CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration capacity is then calculated with consideration of the effect of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> on formation water density, aquifer thickness, and aquifer porosity.

Weir *et al.* (1996) used the multiphase, multi-component TOUGH2 reservoir model to simulate  $CO_2$  injection in geologic media. They concluded that the most significant factor affecting

volumetric  $CO_2$  storage potential is permeability. Pruess *et al.* (2001) incorporated a realistic description of brine- $CO_2$  mixture properties for supercritical conditions and a reaction model of representative aquifer minerals into a multi-purpose reservoir simulator. They used it to evaluate dynamic effects of  $CO_2$  injection into aquifers, and found that under favorable conditions, the amount of  $CO_2$  sequestered by precipitation of secondary carbonates is comparable to that dissolved in aquifer water.

Ozah *et al.* (2005) used a compositional reservoir simulator to understand factors effecting the long-term storage potential of pure  $CO_2$  and  $CO_2$ -H<sub>2</sub>S mixtures in deep saline aquifers. Aquifer characteristics such as heterogeneity, dip angle, and vertical to horizontal permeability ratio were shown to effect storage potential and injectivity of  $CO_2$ -H<sub>2</sub>S gas mixtures. Gas injection into aquifers was greatly aided by the use of horizontal wells to promote trapping and dissolution and to avoid contact with the top seal, which can potentially cause escape of the gas.

Zhang *et al.* (2007) developed an efficient parallel simulator for  $CO_2$  sequestration in saline aquifers. The three-dimensional fully implicit simulator includes a comprehensive description of thermodynamics and thermophysical properties of H<sub>2</sub>O-NaCl-CO<sub>2</sub> mixtures, and can handle non-isothermal flow as well. This simulator can solve larger and more complex problems than a single CPU one could.

Delshad *et al.* (2009) used an iterative IMPEC method with a volume balance convergence criterion to solve for non-isothermal compositional flow coupled with chemical reactions. Field scale  $CO_2$  sequestration, as an EOR process or for containment in deep saline aquifers where chemical reactions and temperature variations may have an impact on the flow and transport of  $CO_2$ , can be simulated using this method.

Wellman *et al.* (2003) used the results of  $CO_2$ -brine flow experiments in rock cores to calibrate a reactive transport simulator, and then used the simulator to model several of  $CO_2$  sequestration options in depleted oil and gas reservoirs.

Spycher *et al.* (2003) presented a relatively simple non-iterative procedure to calculate the composition of the compressed  $CO_2$  and liquid  $H_2O$  phases at equilibrium. The procedure is based on equating chemical potentials and uses the Redlich-Kwong equation of state to express departure from ideal behavior. Spycher and Pruess (2005) extended these correlations by including activity coefficients for aqueous  $CO_2$  derived from several literature sources, primarily for NaCl solutions. Best results were obtained by combining the previous solubility correlations with the activity coefficient formulation of Rumpf *et al.* (1994) and Duan and Sun (2003).

### **Development of a Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO<sub>2</sub> Flow Module**

For mixtures of  $CO_2$  and brine there are seven possible phase combinations (Figure 2.1). The fluid property module for brine- $CO_2$  mixtures will be designed to handle all possible phase combinations of aqueous phase, sub-critical liquid and gaseous  $CO_2$ , and supercritical  $CO_2$ .



Figure 2.1. Possible phase combinations in the system water- $CO_2$ . The phase designations are (a) - aqueous, (l) - liquid  $CO_2$ , (g) - gaseous  $CO_2$ . Separate liquid and gas phases exist only at subcritical conditions.

Our work starts from a fluid property module dubbed "EOSMS" that we had developed for TOUGH2 (Pruess *et al.*, 1999) some years ago to represent all possible phase combinations of brine-CO<sub>2</sub> mixtures. The main drawback of EOSMS is that it uses the concept of a partial pressure for CO<sub>2</sub> to perform phase diagnostics and calculate thermophysical properties. We eliminated any use of the partial pressure concept, and instead used only total pressure, to enable implementation of the accurate phase-partitioning model of Spycher *et al.* (2003), that is used in the ECO2N fluid property module (Pruess and Spycher, 2007). This new module is called "ECO2M."

For ECO2M we adopt the same correlations for thermodynamic and thermophysical properties of brine-CO<sub>2</sub> mixtures as in ECO2N. This includes density, viscosity, and specific enthalpy of fluid phases as function of temperature, pressure, and composition; and partitioning of mass components H<sub>2</sub>O, NaCl and CO<sub>2</sub> among the different phases. We consider all seven possible phase combinations in the brine-CO<sub>2</sub> system (Figure 2.1; the number of phase combinations doubles to fourteen when allowing for the possibility of solid salt appearing and disappearing). In ECO2M we identify phase conditions by means of a separate numerical index (Table 2.1). Depending upon the phase combination present, not all thermodynamic parameters are independent, and different sets of primary thermodynamic variables must be used for different phase combinations (see Table 2.1). The meaning of variables not yet explained is X - mass fraction of CO<sub>2</sub>, S<sub>a</sub> - saturation of aqueous phase, S<sub>g</sub> - saturation of gas phase, and Y - mass fraction of water. The second primary variable  $X_{sm}$  refers to NaCl and denotes salt mass fraction  $X_s$  in the two-component water-salt system when there is no solid salt, or "solid saturation"  $S_s+10$ when halite precipitate is present. Here, "solid saturation" denotes the fraction of pore volume with solid salt.

Phase Conditions	Phase	Primary Variables			
	Index				
		1	2	3	4
aqueous only	1	P	X <sub>sm</sub>	X	T
liquid only	2	P	$X_{sm}$	X	T
gas only	3	P	$X_{sm}$	X	T
aqueous and liquid	4	P	$X_{sm}$	Sa	T
aqueous and gas	5	P	$X_{sm}$	$S_a$	T
liquid and gas	6	P	$X_{sm}$	$S_g$	Y
three phase	7	P	$X_{sm}$	Sa	Sg

Table 2.1. Primary thermodynamic variables used for multiphase mixtures of brine and CO<sub>2</sub>.

When thermodynamic conditions change in the course of a simulation, the primary thermodynamic variables are monitored to determine whether phase conditions change. For example, for a grid block that is in two-phase *a-l* conditions (index = 4), we monitor the third primary variable, aqueous phase saturation  $S_a$ . Liquid phase saturation is  $S_l = 1 - S_s - S_a$ , so that, as long as  $0 < S_a < 1-S_s$ , we have  $S_l > 0$  and two-phase *a-l* conditions are maintained. If  $S_a \ge 1-S_s$ , the liquid CO<sub>2</sub> phase disappears, and we make a transition from *a-l* to single-phase aqueous conditions. If  $S_a \le 0$ , the aqueous phase disappears, and we transition to single-phase liquid conditions. For sub-critical temperatures, we also need to check whether a gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> phase evolves. This is done by comparing fluid pressure with the CO<sub>2</sub> saturation pressure at prevailing temperature considered here, we require that  $P \ge P_{sats CO2}(T)$  in order that no gas phase evolves. If this inequality is violated, we make a transition to three-phase *a-l-g* conditions, and initialize the new gas phase with a small saturation of order 10<sup>-6</sup>. Figure 2.1 indicates that there are 18 possible phase changes between the 7 possible phase combinations, and similar checks are employed for all of them.

Experience has shown that phase change criteria as outlined above may be prone to generating unstable behavior with severe limitations for attainable time steps, especially when dealing with transitions between  $a-l \ll a-l-g \ll a-g$ . We achieve a more robust behavior by introducing a finite "window" for phase change, as follows. In the above example, instead of performing a transition from a-l to a-l-g whenever  $P \leq P_{sat,CO2}(T)$ , we evolve a gas phase only when P drops below  $P_{sat,CO2}(T)$  by a finite amount,  $P \leq (1-\epsilon) * P_{sat,CO2}(T)$ , where  $\epsilon$  is a small parameter of order  $10^{-3} - 10^{-5}$ . As a further refinement, we may optionally apply a "hair trigger" criterion  $P \leq P_{sat,CO2}(T)$  for phase change only for the first few Newtonian iterations during a time step, and switch to a finite window for the subsequent Newtonian iterations. The added robustness in simulator behavior achievable from dynamic finite-size windows for phase change is essential for efficient simulation of highly non-linear flow processes that involve boiling and condensation of liquid and gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> phases, with strong associated latent heat effects.

From a thermodynamic standpoint, it is possible for liquid  $CO_2$  to change into gas, or vice versa, without a phase change, as long as the path from initial to final state avoids crossing the  $CO_2$  saturation line. In order to achieve a consistent description of  $CO_2$  phase conditions throughout the entire *T*,*P*-plane (Figure 2.2), we adopt the convention that for supercritical temperatures, a

change between liquid and gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> conditions is made whenever fluid pressure moves past the critical value. Note that this change of phase designation is merely an accounting device, and fluid properties for  $T > T_{crit}$  are continuous when P changes past  $P_{crit}$ .

ECO2M includes a capability for modeling conductive heat exchange with semi-infinite half spaces, using a semi-analytical method developed by Vinsome and Westerveld (1980). This technique allows to accurately represent heat transfer between fluids in a permeable fault zone and the adjacent wall rocks of low permeability, without any need for including the wall rocks in the simulation domain.



Figure 2.2. T.P-diagram of a typical geothermal-hydrostatic profile. The CO<sub>2</sub> saturation line is also shown, as is a profile that corresponds to a pressure increase of  $\Delta P = 10$  bar at 1500 m depth.

### Verification of Three-Phase Non-Isothermal CO<sub>2</sub> Flow Module

### 1) CO<sub>2</sub> Leakage from a Secondary Accumulation at Shallow Depth

We revisit a previously investigated leakage scenario that had been purposefully designed to enable positive feedback for  $CO_2$  discharge, and thereby gain insight into the potential strength of self-enhancing processes (Pruess, 2008). The scenario involves  $CO_2$  migration up a blind fault and subsequent accumulation in a secondary "parasitic" reservoir at shallower depth (Figure 2.3).  $CO_2$  discharge to the land surface is initiated after a sufficient quantity of  $CO_2$  has accumulated to reach a spill point. A potential for a self-enhancing discharge exists when the water column in the upper fault is replaced by  $CO_2$  of much lower density and viscosity, and accumulated  $CO_2$ expands in response to reduced fluid pressures.

Our earlier analysis of this problem had used a preliminary version of a three-phase fluid property module for brine-CO<sub>2</sub> mixtures (Pruess, 2004), and had indeed shown transient enhancements of CO<sub>2</sub> outflow relative to the inflow by factors up to 3.5, depending on the assumed hydrogeologic parameters (Pruess, 2008). While this confirmed the expected self-enhancement, the simulations also revealed significant self-limiting features, including boiling of upflowing liquid CO<sub>2</sub> accompanied by strong declines in temperature, and evolution of three-phase conditions with small mobility for all fluid phases. Our earlier fluid property formulation had treated the mutual dissolution of H<sub>2</sub>O and CO<sub>2</sub> by means of an extended Henry's law for CO<sub>2</sub> and an evaporation model for H<sub>2</sub>O. This approach overestimated CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution and underestimated H<sub>2</sub>O dissolution, with inaccuracy becoming greater at increasing pressures. In contrast, the new ECO2M module includes much improved correlations that describe the compositions of the various fluid phases generally within the uncertainty of the experimental data (Spycher *et al.*, 2003).

Figure 2.4 shows simulated CO<sub>2</sub> land surface discharge per unit fault length for a case with an upper fault zone permeability of  $80 \times 10^{-15}$  m<sup>2</sup>. At early time the TOUGH2/ECO2M simulation shows close agreement with our previous results, but starting at about  $55 \times 10^6$  s we now see stronger cyclic excursions of CO<sub>2</sub> flow. Peak CO<sub>2</sub> discharge is reached a bit sooner, although the magnitude is very little changed. These minor differences are consistent with lower solubility for CO<sub>2</sub> and increased solubility for water in our current model, as both effects will amplify the evolution and mobility of CO<sub>2</sub>-rich phases.



Figure 2.3. Conceptual sketch of a leakage scenario (left) and actual dimensions of the flow system (right).



Figure 2.4.  $CO_2$  outflow at the land surface per unit length of the fault zone, comparing our new TOUGH2/ECO2M model with earlier results.

### 2) CO<sub>2</sub> Discharge from a Deep Fault Zone

We consider leakage of CO<sub>2</sub> from a deep storage reservoir along a vertical fault zone of 5 m thickness. The fault is assumed to intersect the CO<sub>2</sub> reservoir at a depth of Z = -1500 m. Fault zone permeability is assumed as  $k = 100 \times 10^{-15}$  m<sup>2</sup>, porosity  $\phi = 15$  %, with wall rocks assumed completely impermeable. Initial conditions in the fault correspond to hydrostatic equilibrium in a typical geothermal gradient, as shown in Figures 2.5 and 2.6. Initial conditions at Z = -1500 m depth are found to be (T, P) = (60 °C, 147.475 bar).



Figure 2.5. Typical temperature and pressure profiles in terrestrial crust.



Figure 2.6. *T*,*P*-diagram of a typical geothermal-hydrostatic profile. The CO<sub>2</sub> saturation line is also shown, as is a profile that corresponds to a pressure increase of  $\Delta P = 10$  bar at 1500 m depth.

The scenario considered here does not model the CO<sub>2</sub> storage reservoir as such; instead, we assume that a CO<sub>2</sub> plume from a nearby storage reservoir reaches the bottom of the fault zone at some pressure in excess of hydrostatic. We model a finite-length section of the fault as a 1-D system, and initiate upflow of CO<sub>2</sub> by specifying boundary conditions of supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> at an overpressure of 10 bar relative to hydrostatic pressure at the bottom of the fault. Land surface conditions are kept unchanged. The pressurization from the step change in bottom boundary conditions rapidly migrates up the fault; the resulting *T*,*P*-profile is shown in Figure 2.6 In response to CO<sub>2</sub> injection water is being pushed upward, and a front of free-phase CO<sub>2</sub> is advancing towards the land surface. Our model accounts for non-isothermal effects that arise from (1) upflow of warmer (T = 60 °C) fluid into colder regions, (2) Joule-Thomson cooling as upflowing CO<sub>2</sub> expands (Katz and Lee, 1990), (3) boiling of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> into gas, and (4) mutual dissolution of H<sub>2</sub>O and CO<sub>2</sub>. An important aspect of system evolution is conductive heat exchange with the wall rocks, which we model by means of a semi-analytical method (Vinsome and Westerveld, 1980).

Our simulation stops after 36.3 years  $(1.145 \times 10^9 \text{ s})$ , when temperatures near 275 m depth approach the freezing point of water. Figure 2.7 shows profiles of temperature and CO<sub>2</sub> phase saturations at different times. The saturation profile at t = 6.42 yr gives a snapshot just prior to commencement of CO<sub>2</sub> discharge at the land surface at 6.425 yr.



Figure 2.7. Saturation and temperature profiles at different times.

Note a sharp transition from liquid to gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> at 540 m depth. As will be seen below, this transition occurs almost exactly at the critical point of CO<sub>2</sub>. Over time the system experiences predominant cooling effects, and evolves an extended region with 3-phase fluid conditions (aqueous - liquid CO<sub>2</sub> - gaseous CO<sub>2</sub>). After t = 27.33 yr, three-phase conditions are seen to extend from - 240 m to -460 m depth (note that an aqueous phase is present throughout, which is not shown in Figure 2.7). There is a precipitous temperature decline in the three-phase zone, reflecting heat loss as liquid CO<sub>2</sub> boils into gas. Lowest temperatures are reached at the liquid CO<sub>2</sub> front, where rates of boiling and associated heat loss are largest. We note that saturations of liquid CO<sub>2</sub> increase to large values beneath the three-phase zone. This represents buoyant accumulation of less dense fluid (liquid CO<sub>2</sub>) beneath a region of low effective permeability. The three-phase zone acts as a mobility block, because in three-phase conditions, relative permeabilities are small for all phases. Within the three-phase zone, liquid and gas saturations show strong fluctuations, which are due to the interplay between multiphase flow and conductive heat transfer in the fault walls with different time constants. The sum of liquid and gas saturations,  $S_{liq}+S_{gas}$ , shows much smaller fluctuations than either  $S_{liq}$  or  $S_{gas}$  (not shown).

At early times, outflow at the land surface is just aqueous phase. A large "burp" of water outflow occurs as free CO<sub>2</sub> approaches the land surface, reflecting the strong volume expansion there (Figure 2.8). CO<sub>2</sub> flux at the land surface shows non-monotonic behavior. Periods of large CO<sub>2</sub> outflow correlate with declining temperatures of the discharge (Figure 2.8). The largest CO<sub>2</sub> flux approaches  $2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ kg/s/m}^2$ , which for the assumed fault zone thickness of 5 m translates into an outflow rate of somewhat less than  $10^{-2} \text{ kg/s}$  per meter fault length, or 1 kg/s per 100 m fault length. During periods when the CO<sub>2</sub> outflow rate is relatively small, three-phase conditions migrate upward, and the region with three-phase conditions thickens (Figure 2.9). As CO<sub>2</sub> outflow rates increase, the upward extension of three-phase conditions slows and eventually turns around when liquid CO<sub>2</sub> is boiled off the top of the three-phase zone at large rates.

Additional insight into the system dynamics can be gained by examining the evolution of profiles in *T*,*P*-space. Figure 2.10 shows that, as a consequence of the pressure increase and temperature decline during CO<sub>2</sub> migration, the *T*,*P*-profile is rapidly shifted towards the CO<sub>2</sub> saturation line. Thermodynamic conditions get drawn towards the critical point and then approximately follow the saturation line. Note that three-phase points must fall right on the saturation line, while in the vicinity of three-phase zones, thermodynamic conditions will plot near the saturation line. At time t = 27.33 yr we have a large extent of three-phase conditions (Figures 2.7, 2.9), and a correspondingly large region of *T*,*P*-conditions overlapping with the saturation line. Temperatures have a local minimum at the lowest pressure (shallowest depth) with three-phase conditions. Temperatures increase near the bottom of the overlying two-phase aqueous-gas zone, but resume enhanced decline due to Joule-Thomson cooling as the gas expands during upward flow.



Figure 2.8. Time dependence of water and  $CO_2$  outflow at the land surface, and temperatures at two different depths.

Figure 2.9. Water and  $CO_2$  fluxes as shown in Figure 2.8, with the heavy superposed lines indicating the top and bottom of three-phase conditions, respectively.



Figure 2.10. Temperature-pressure profiles at different times.

# Integration of ECO2M into the iTOUGH2 Simulation-Optimization Framework

ECO2M, developed in this project, is a fluid property module for the TOUGH2 simulator designed for applications to geologic storage of  $CO_2$  in saline aquifers. It includes a comprehensive description of the thermodynamics and thermophysical properties of  $H_2O$  - NaCl -  $CO_2$  mixtures. ECO2M can describe all possible phase conditions for brine-CO<sub>2</sub> mixtures, including transitions between super- and sub-critical conditions, and phase change between liquid and gaseous  $CO_2$ . This allows for seamless modeling of  $CO_2$  storage and leakage.

The application of ECO2M for the study of  $CO_2$  storage and leakage scenarios requires specifying a large number of hydrological and thermal model parameters, initial and boundary conditions, and possibly geometrical features of the geologic system. Many of these parameters are unknown or uncertain. Site-specific values thus must be derived from available observations of the system state. Parameter estimation is supported by iTOUGH2, which provides automatic model calibration capabilities along with formal sensitivity, uncertainty propagation, and dataworth analyses.

As a follow-on to the development of ECO2M in this project, ECO2M has been fully integrated into the iTOUGH2 simulation-optimization framework to make parameter estimation and related uncertainty analyses available for the development of conceptual and numerical models and the analysis of CO<sub>2</sub> storage and leakage scenarios.

### **Summary and Conclusions**

We extended a previously developed TOUGH2 fluid property module, ECO2N, to include all possible phase compositions of brine-CO<sub>2</sub> mixtures, including three-phase conditions of aqueous, liquid and gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> phases. The new fluid property module, ECO2M, retains the original ECO2N-formulation for the compositions and properties of the aqueous and CO<sub>2</sub>-rich phases, and allows a seamless description of CO<sub>2</sub> storage and leakage systems for super- and sub-critical conditions in the temperature range 10 °C  $\leq$  T  $\leq$  110 °C, pressures up to 600 bar, and dissolved NaCl with salinity up to full halite saturation.

We verified the new fluid property module using  $CO_2$  leakage scenarios that demonstrate strong cooling effects from liquid  $CO_2$  boiling into gas, and from Joule-Thomson cooling of upflowing and expanding gas. These scenarios show the emergence of three-phase conditions that lead to low mobilities for all phases and act to reduce  $CO_2$  discharge rates. The original ECO2N module, with only one  $CO_2$ -rich phase, would predict higher phase mobilities and  $CO_2$  discharge rates.

## Task 3.0: Development of a rock mechanical module

### Introduction

We describe here the development of a fully coupled, fully implicit thermal-hydrologicalmechanical (THM) simulator called TOUGH2-CSM (Carbon Storage Model, Colorado School of Mines). The geomechanical equations relating stresses and displacements are combined to yield an equation for mean stress as a function of pore pressure and temperature, as well as an equation for volumetric strain. The multiphase flow formulation is based on the TOUGH2 (Pruess et al., 1999) formulation, but with mean stress as an additional primary variable. Effective stress, the difference between mean stress and pore pressure, was first introduced by Terzaghi (1936) during his studies of the mechanics of saturated soils and its details were further refined by Biot (1941) and others. Theories of poroelasticity (Geertsma, 1957; Carroll and Katsube, 1983; Zimmerman, 1991) have correlated rock properties such as porosity to effective stress, and experimental studies (Nur and Byerlee, 1971) have supported these relations. The dependence of permeability on porosity has had numerous investigators (Bear, 1972) and an early example is the Carman-Kozeny hydraulic radius model. In addition, Gobran et al. (1987) concluded that permeability is dependent on the difference between confining pressure and pore pressure (effective stress) but not on their actual values. We incorporate these dependencies of porosity and permeability into our simulator, obtained from theories of poroelasticity and empirical correlations from the literature.

The starting point for the TOUGH2-CSM code is the TOUGH2-MP code (Zhang *et al.*, 2008), the massively parallel version of TOUGH2. The details of the parallel code will be covered in "Task 6.0: Implementation of Efficient Parallel Computing Technologies." In addition, TOUGH2-CSM, simulates multiphase  $CO_2$  flow coupled with rock deformation in porous and fractured rock. The single-porosity TOUGH2-CSM formulation is described in this section and the multiple porosity one will be covered in "Task 7.0: Implementation of General Fracture Conceptual Models."

### **TOUGH2-CSM Single-Porosity Geomechanical Equations**

The TOUGH2-CSM geomechanical equations are based on an extended version of the classical theory of elasticity. In this theory of elasticity, the stress-strain behavior of an isothermal elastic material is described by Hooke's law:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = 2G\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} + \lambda \left(tr\boldsymbol{\varepsilon}\right)\boldsymbol{I} \tag{3.1}$$

where G is shear modulus and  $\lambda$  is the Lamé parameter. For isothermal fluid-filled porous rocks, the stress-strain behavior is also dependent on pore pressure and the poroelastic version of Hooke's law is:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} - \alpha P \boldsymbol{I} = 2G \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} + \lambda \left( t r \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \right) \boldsymbol{I}$$
(3.2)

where  $\alpha$  is Biot's coefficient (Biot and Willis, 1957). For an elastic material subject to changes in both temperature and stress, the theory of thermoelasticity assumes the resulting strain is the sum of the thermal strain and the stress-caused strain. This theory is mathematically analogous to poroelastic theory (Norris, 1992) and Hooke's law for thermoelastic media has the form:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} - 3\boldsymbol{\beta}K\left(T - T_{ref}\right)\boldsymbol{I} = 2G\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} + \lambda(tr\boldsymbol{\varepsilon})\boldsymbol{I}$$
(3.3)

where  $T_{ref}$  is reference temperature for a thermally unstrained state, K is bulk modulus, and  $\beta$  is linear thermal expansion coefficient. For a thermo-poroelastic medium, a porous medium subject to changes in both temperature and stress (McTigue, 1986), the pore pressure and temperature terms both appear in Hooke's law as:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} - \alpha P \boldsymbol{I} - 3\beta K \left( T - T_{ref} \right) \boldsymbol{I} = 2G \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} + \lambda \left( tr \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \right) \boldsymbol{I}$$
(3.4)

Two other fundamental relations in the theory of linear elasticity are the relation between the strain tensor and the displacement vector  $\boldsymbol{u}$ :

$$\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \nabla \boldsymbol{u} + \nabla \boldsymbol{u}^{t} \right) \tag{3.5}$$

and the static equilibrium equation:

$$\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{\tau} + \boldsymbol{F}_b = 0 \tag{3.6}$$

where  $F_b$  is the body force. We combine Equations 3.4-3.6 to obtain the thermo-poroelastic Navier equation:

$$\nabla (\alpha P + 3\beta KT) + (\lambda + G)\nabla (\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u}) + G\nabla^2 \boldsymbol{u} + \boldsymbol{F}_b = 0$$
(3.7)

Taking the divergence of Equation 3.7 yields:

$$\nabla^{2} \left( \alpha P + 3\beta KT \right) + \left( \lambda + 2G \right) \nabla^{2} \left( \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u} \right) + \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{F}_{b} = 0$$
(3.8)

The divergence of the displacement vector is the sum of the normal strain components, the volumetric strain:

$$\nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u} = \frac{\partial u_x}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial u_y}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial u_z}{\partial z} = \varepsilon_{xx} + \varepsilon_{yy} + \varepsilon_{zz} = \varepsilon_v$$
(3.9)

The trace of the stress tensor is an invariant, having the same value for any coordinate system. We obtain the following by taking the trace of Equation 3.4, Hooke's law for a thermoporoelastic medium:

$$\tau_{xx} + \tau_{yy} + \tau_{zz} - 3\left(\alpha P + 3\beta K \left(T - T_{ref}\right)\right) = (3\lambda + 2G)\left(\varepsilon_{xx} + \varepsilon_{yy} + \varepsilon_{zz}\right)$$
(3.10)

Defining mean stress as the average of the normal stress components, and using the relationship between bulk modulus, shear modulus, and Lamé parameter:

$$K = \frac{\left(3\lambda + 2G\right)}{3} \tag{3.11}$$

yield the following equation relating volumetric strain, mean stress, pore pressure, and temperature:

$$K\varepsilon_{v} = \tau_{m} - \left(\alpha P + 3\beta K \left(T - T_{ref}\right)\right)$$
(3.12)

Finally, combining Equations 3.8, 3.9, and 3.12, and using the relationship between Poisson's ratio, v, shear modulus, and Lamé parameter:

$$\frac{\lambda}{G} = \frac{2\nu}{\left(1 - 2\nu\right)} \tag{3.13}$$

yield an equation relating mean stress, pore pressure, temperature, and body force:

$$\nabla \cdot \left[ \frac{3(1-\upsilon)}{1+\upsilon} \nabla \tau_m + F_b - \frac{2(1-2\upsilon)}{1+\upsilon} \nabla \left( \alpha P + 3\beta KT \right) \right] = 0$$
(3.14)

Equations 3.12 and 3.14 are the governing single-porosity geomechanical equations for TOUGH2-CSM, and mean stress and volumetric strain are the geomechanical variables associated with those equations. Equation 3.14 is a statement of momentum conservation in terms of mean stress and other variables and Equation 3.12 is a property relation, relating volumetric strain to mean stress and other variables.

### **TOUGH2-CSM Single-Porosity Conservation Equations**

The TOUGH2-CSM conservation equations are based on the TOUGH2 formulation (Pruess *et al.*, 1999) of mass and energy balance equations that describe fluid and heat flow in general multiphase, multicomponent systems. Fluid advection is described with a multiphase extension of Darcy's law; in addition, there is diffusive mass transport in all phases. Heat flow occurs by conduction and convection, the latter including sensible as well as latent heat effects. The description of thermodynamic conditions is based on the assumption of local equilibrium of all phases. Fluid and formation parameters can be arbitrary nonlinear functions of the primary thermodynamic variables. We modify this formulation to include geomechanics. In addition to the mass and energy balance equations, we solve a momentum balance equation for mean stress that was derived in the previous section (Equation 3.14), we add mean stress to the primary

thermodynamic variables, and we add volumetric strain to the calculated properties. The conservation equations for mass, momentum, and energy can be written in differential form as:

$$\frac{\partial M^k}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{F}^k + q^k \tag{3.15}$$

where k refers to conserved quantity, M is conserved quantity per unit volume, q is source or sink per unit volume, and F is flux.

Mass per unit volume is a sum over phases:

$$M^k = \phi \sum_l S_l \rho_l X_l^k \tag{3.16}$$

where  $\phi$  is porosity, S is phase saturation,  $\rho$  is mass density, and X is mass fraction of component k. Energy per unit volume accounts for internal energy in rock and fluid and is the following:

$$M^{N+1} = (1 - \phi)C_r \rho_r T + \phi \sum_l S_l \rho_l U_l$$
(3.17)

where  $\rho_r$  is rock density,  $C_r$  is rock specific heat, T is temperature, U is phase specific internal energy, and N is the number of mass components. Momentum per unit volume is small compared to momentum flux and has been neglected in our formulation.

Advective mass flux is a sum over phases:

$$\boldsymbol{F}_{adv}^{k} = \sum_{l} \boldsymbol{F}_{l} \boldsymbol{X}_{l}^{k}$$
(3.18)

and phase flux  $F_i$  is given by Darcy's law:

$$\boldsymbol{F}_{l} = -k \frac{k_{rl} \rho_{l}}{\mu_{l}} \left( \nabla P + \nabla P_{c,l} - \rho_{l} \boldsymbol{g} \right)$$
(3.19)

where k is absolute permeability,  $k_r$  is phase relative permeability,  $\mu$  is phase viscosity, P is pore pressure,  $P_c$  is phase capillary pressure, and g is gravitational acceleration. Capillary pressure is relative to a reference phase, which is the gaseous phase. Diffusive mass flux is given by:

$$\boldsymbol{F}_{dis}^{k} = \sum_{l} \rho_{l} \boldsymbol{D}_{l}^{k} X_{l}^{k}$$
(3.20)

where  $D_l^k$  is the dispersion tensor. Energy flux includes conductive and convective components:

$$\boldsymbol{F}^{N+1} = -\lambda \nabla T + \sum_{l} h_{l} \boldsymbol{F}_{l}$$
(3.21)

where  $\lambda$  is thermal conductivity and  $h_l$  is phase *l* specific enthalpy.

# Discretization of Single-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM Conservation Equations

The TOUGH2-CSM mass, energy, and momentum balance equations are discretized in space using the integral finite difference method (Narasimhan and Witherspoon, 1976). In this method, the simulation domain is subdivided into grid blocks and the conservation equations (Equation 3.15) are integrated over grid block volume  $V_n$  with flux terms expressed as an integral over grid block surface  $\Gamma_n$  using the divergence theorem:

$$\frac{d}{dt} \int_{V_n} M^k dV = \int_{\Gamma_n} \mathbf{F}^k \cdot \mathbf{n} d\Gamma + \int_{V_n} q^k dV$$
(3.22)

Volume integrals are replaced with volume averages:

$$\int_{V_n} M^k dV = M_n^k V_n \tag{3.23}$$

and surface integrals with discrete sums over surface averaged segments:

$$\int_{\Gamma_n} \boldsymbol{F}^k \cdot \boldsymbol{n} d\Gamma = \sum_m A_{nm} F_{nm}^k$$
(3.24)

where subscript *n* denotes an averaged quantity over volume  $V_n$ ,  $A_{nm}$  is the area of a surface segment common to volumes  $V_n$  and  $V_m$ , and double subscript *nm* denotes an averaged quantity over area  $A_{nm}$ . The definitions of the geometric parameters used in this discretization are illustrated in Figure 3.1.



Figure 3.1. Parameter definitions for the integral finite difference method, adapted from Pruess *et al.* (1999).
Strictly speaking, the integrals in Equation 3.22 apply to fixed grid block geometry. Because volumetric strain is a variable in our geomechanical formulation, grid block volume as well as grid block distances and areas are no longer fixed. We introduce volumetric strain dependence into the volumes, areas, and distances that arise when the integrals in Equations 3.23 and 3.24 are evaluated. These dependencies are based on the definition of volumetric strain:

$$V_n\left(\varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right) = V_{n,0}\left(1 - \varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right) \tag{3.25}$$

where  $V_{n,0}$  is grid block *n* volume at zero strain and  $\varepsilon_{v,n}$  is grid block *n* average volumetric strain. Changes in volumetric strain also cause changes in grid block areas and distances. We account for these by first defining analogs of Equation 3.25 for areas and distances (*A* and *D*) in terms of average area and distance strain ( $\varepsilon_A$  and  $\varepsilon_D$ ):

$$A_{nm}\left(\varepsilon_{A,nm}\right) = A_{nm,0}\left(1 - \varepsilon_{A,nm}\right) \tag{3.26}$$

and:

$$D_n\left(\varepsilon_{\mathrm{D},n}\right) = D_{n,0}\left(1 - \varepsilon_{\mathrm{D},n}\right) \tag{3.27}$$

where  $\varepsilon_{A,nm}$  is the average of area strains  $\varepsilon_{A,n}$  and  $\varepsilon_{A,m}$ . Substituting Equation 3.25 into the volume integral (Equation 3.23) yields:

$$\int_{V_n} \mathcal{M}^k dV = \mathcal{M}_n^k V_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{\nu,n} \right)$$
(3.28)

and substituting Equation 3.26 into the surface integral (Equation 3.24) yields

$$\int_{\Gamma_n} \boldsymbol{F}^k \cdot \boldsymbol{n} d\Gamma = \sum_m A_{nm,0} \left( 1 - \boldsymbol{\varepsilon}_{A,nm} \right) F_{nm}^k$$
(3.29)

Next, we relate area and distance strains to volumetric strain. Because our geomechanical formulation is in terms of volumetric strain only, we must make an assumption to do this. We assume either isotropic or uniaxial volumetric strain. For isotropic volumetric strain, area strain and volumetric strain are related by:

$$(1-\varepsilon_{v}) = (1-\varepsilon_{A})^{\frac{3}{2}}$$
(3.30)

and since strains are small:

$$\varepsilon_{\rm A} \approx \frac{2\varepsilon_{\rm v}}{3}$$
 (3.31)

Distance strain and volumetric strain are related by:

$$\left(1-\varepsilon_{v}\right)=\left(1-\varepsilon_{D}\right)^{3}$$
(3.32)

and since strains are small:

$$\varepsilon_{\rm D} \approx \frac{\varepsilon_{\rm v}}{3}$$
 (3.33)

For uniaxial volumetric strain, distance strain in the strain direction would be equal to volumetric strain and distance strain in other directions would be zero; area strain in the strain direction would be zero and area strain in the other directions would be equal to volumetric strain.

The integral finite difference approximation to the advective mass flux for component k (Equations 3.18 and 3.19) is the following:

$$A_{nm}F_{nm}^{k} = \sum_{l} -k_{nm} \left[ \frac{k_{rl}\rho_{l}X_{lk}}{\mu_{l}} \right]_{nm} \left[ \frac{P_{n} - P_{m} + P_{cl,n} - P_{cl,m}}{D_{n,0}\left(1 - \varepsilon_{D,n}\right) + D_{m,0}\left(1 - \varepsilon_{D,m}\right)} - \rho_{l,nm}g_{l,nm} \right] A_{nm,0}\left(1 - \varepsilon_{A,nm}\right)$$
(3.34)

where  $g_{nm}$  is the component of gravitational acceleration pointing between grid block *n* and grid block *m*. The pressure and capillary pressure gradient terms in Equation 3.19 are approximated as their difference divided by grid block distances ( $D_n$  and  $D_m$ ) that depend on distance strain. Analogous expressions can be obtained for energy and diffusive mass fluxes as well.

Applying the integral finite difference method to the geomechanical equations yields one equation for grid block volumetric strain in terms of grid block mean stress, pore pressure, and temperature:

$$K\varepsilon_{\nu,n} = \tau_{m,n} - \left(\alpha P_n + 3\beta K \left(T_n - T_{ref}\right)\right)$$
(3.35)

and another one that is a discrete sum of momentum fluxes over grid block surface segments:

$$\Sigma_{m} \left[ \left( \frac{3(1-\upsilon)}{(1+\upsilon)} \right)_{nm} \frac{\tau_{n} - \tau_{m}}{D_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,n} \right) + D_{m,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,m} \right)} + \left( F_{b} \cdot n \right)_{nm} - \left( \frac{2(1-2\upsilon)}{(1+\upsilon)} \right)_{nm} \left( \alpha \frac{P_{n} - P_{m}}{D_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,n} \right) + D_{m,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,m} \right)} + \left( 3\beta K \right)_{nm} \frac{T_{n} - T_{m}}{D_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,n} \right) + D_{m,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,m} \right)} \right] \right]$$

$$A_{nm,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{A,nm} \right) = 0$$
(3.36)

## **Solution of TOUGH2-CSM Conservation Equations**

The TOUGH2-CSM conservation equations are assembled by using Equations 3.23 and 3.24 to approximate the volume and surface integrals in Equation 3.22, replacing the time derivative by the standard first order finite difference approximation, and evaluating the fluxes and source/sink terms fully implicitly. The resulting set of nonlinear of algebraic equations in residual form is:

$$\begin{bmatrix} R_n^k \end{bmatrix}^{l+1} = \begin{bmatrix} M_n^k \left(1 - \varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right) \end{bmatrix}^{l+1} - \begin{bmatrix} M_n^k \left(1 - \varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right) \end{bmatrix}^l - \frac{\Delta t}{V_{n,0}} \begin{bmatrix} \sum_m A_{nm,0} \left(1 - \varepsilon_{A,nm}\right) F_{nm}^k + V_{n,0} \left(1 - \varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right) q_n^k \end{bmatrix}^{l+1} = 0$$
(3.37)

where *l* is time level. These equations are expressed in vector form as:

$$\boldsymbol{R}\left(\boldsymbol{x}^{l+1}\right) = 0 \tag{3.38}$$

where  $x^{l+1}$  is the primary variable vector at time level l+1. The vector of equations, Equation 3.37, is solved by the Newton-Raphson method. The Newton-Raphson method is an iterative procedure used to solve systems of non-linear equations. Denoting iteration number by subscript p, the following system of equations result from applying the Newton-Raphson method to Equation 3.37:

$$J(\boldsymbol{x}_{p}^{l+1})(\boldsymbol{x}_{p}^{l+1}-\boldsymbol{x}_{p}^{l}) = -\boldsymbol{R}(\boldsymbol{x}_{p}^{l+1})$$
(3.39)

where the Jacobian matrix J(x) is defined as:

$$\left[J(\mathbf{x})\right]_{ij} = \frac{\partial R_i(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_j}$$
(3.40)

The Jacobian matrix is evaluated by numerical differentiation:

$$\frac{\partial R_i(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_j} \approx \frac{R_i(\mathbf{x}(\forall i \neq j), x_j + \varepsilon_j) - R_i(\mathbf{x})}{\varepsilon_j}$$
(3.41)

where  $\varepsilon_j$  is the increment for primary variable  $x_j$ . The iteration is converged when all residuals  $R_i$  are less than a prescribed tolerance,  $\varepsilon_{tol}$ :

$$\frac{R_i\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{p+1}^{l+1}\right)}{M_i\left(\boldsymbol{x}_{p+1}^{l+1}\right)} \le \varepsilon_{tol}$$
(3.42)

# **Geomechanical Boundary Conditions**

The momentum conservation equation (Equation 3.14) is the divergence of a momentum flux and applying the integral finite difference method to it yields an integral of momentum flux over the grid block surface that is approximated as a discrete sum over surface averaged segments. Grid block surface segments are common to another grid block or border the surroundings. The Equation 3.36 summation term as is applies to surface segments that are common to another grid block. For grid block surface segments that border the surroundings, we modify that term by applying the geomechanical boundary conditions.

There are four terms that comprise the momentum flux: the body force, and the mean stress, pressure, and temperature difference terms. The body force term contains the dot product of the body force, which points in the direction of the gravitational vector, with the vector pointing between grid blocks n and m, as shown in Figure 3.1. We neglect this term for surface segments bordering the surroundings. For such a segment, the vector pointing between grid blocks n and m is arbitrary so we assume it is orthogonal to the gravitational vector. Surface segments bordering the surroundings generally have no fluid flowing through them (fluid loss to the surroundings is generally represented as a constant pressure sink), so there would be no pore pressure communication between a grid block and the surroundings. Consequently, we neglect the pressure difference term as well. Finally, we assume the temperature and mean stress of the surroundings are the grid block's initial values.

We apply the above boundary conditions to the Equation 3.36 summation term and obtain the form for a surface segment bordering the surroundings:

$$\begin{bmatrix} \left(\frac{3(1-\upsilon)}{(1+\upsilon)}\right)_{n} \frac{\tau_{n} - \tau_{n}^{0}}{2D_{n,0}\left(1-\varepsilon_{D,n}\right)} - \\ \left(\frac{2(1-2\upsilon)}{(1+\upsilon)}\right)_{n} \sum_{j} \left(\left(3\beta K\omega_{j}\right)_{n} \frac{T_{j,n} - T_{j,n}^{0}}{2D_{n,0}\left(1-\varepsilon_{D,n}\right)}\right) \end{bmatrix} A_{nm,0}\left(1-\varepsilon_{A,n}\right)$$
(3.43)

where superscript  $\theta$  refers to grid block initial value and  $D_m$  is replaced by  $D_n$ .

#### **Rock Property Correlations**

We describe the dependence of permeability and porosity on effective stress and other quantities in this section. Effective stress was initially defined as the difference between average stress and pore pressure by Terzhagi (1936) and was generalized by Biot and Willis (1957) as:

$$\tau' = \tau_m - \alpha P \tag{3.44}$$

where  $\alpha$  is the Biot's or effective stress coefficient. Correlations have been developed for porosity as a function of effective stress and other quantities and permeability as a function of either porosity or effective stress. There are numerous examples of the above correlations, with

each developed for a specific set of conditions. We describe those that have been incorporated into TOUGH2-CSM below.

We developed an expression for porosity starting with its definition. Porosity is the ratio of fluid volume to bulk volume, and since fluid volume plus solid volume equals bulk volume, porosity can be written as:

$$\phi = 1 - \frac{V_s}{V} \tag{3.45}$$

where V is bulk volume and  $V_s$  solid volume. Gutierrez and Lewis (2001) presented expressions for solid volume change with pressure and effective stress. These expressions can be integrated to yield an expression for solid volume:

$$V_{s}(P,\tau') = V_{s,r}\left(1 + \frac{1 - \phi_{r}}{K_{s}}(P - P_{r}) - \frac{1}{K_{s}}(\tau' - \tau_{r}')\right)$$
(3.46)

where subscript r refers to reference conditions. Equation 3.25 relates bulk volume to volumetric strain, and when combined with Equations 3.45 and 3.46, yield porosity as a function of pressure, temperature, and effective stress:

$$\phi = 1 - (1 - \phi_r) \frac{\left(1 + \frac{1 - \phi_r}{K_s} (P - P_r) - \frac{1}{K_s} (\tau - \tau_r)\right)}{\frac{(1 - \varepsilon_v)}{(1 - \varepsilon_{v,r})}}$$
(3.47)

An example of reference conditions for Equation 3.47 is the initial conditions for a simulation, where volumetric strain, porosity, mean stress, and pressure are specified.

Rutqvist *et al.* (2002) presented the following function for porosity, obtained from laboratory experiments on sedimentary rock (Davies and Davies, 2001):

$$\phi = \phi_1 + (\phi_0 - \phi_1)e^{-\alpha \tau'}$$
(3.48)

where  $\phi_0$  is zero effective stress porosity,  $\phi_1$  is high effective stress porosity, and the exponent *a* is a parameter. They also presented an associated function for permeability in terms of porosity:

$$k = k_0 e^{c\left(\frac{\phi}{\phi_0} - 1\right)} \tag{3.49}$$

McKee *et al.* (1988) derived a relationship between porosity and effective stress from hydrostatic poroelasticity theory by assuming incompressible rock grains:

$$\phi = \phi_0 \frac{e^{-c_p \left(\tau' - \tau_0'\right)}}{1 - \phi_0 \left(1 - e^{-c_p \left(\tau' - \tau_0'\right)}\right)}$$
(3.50)

where  $c_p$  is average pore compressibility. They also related permeability and porosity using the Carman-Kozeny equation:

$$k \sim \frac{\phi^3}{\left(1-\phi\right)^2} \tag{3.51}$$

These relationships fit laboratory and field data for granite, sandstone, clay, and coal.

Ostensen (1986) studied the relationship between effective stress and permeability for tight gas sands and approximated permeability as:

$$k^n = D \ln \frac{\tau^{**}}{\tau}$$
(3.52)

where exponential *n* is 0.5, *D* is a parameter, and  $\tau^{,*}$  is effective stress for zero permeability, obtained by extrapolating measured square root permeability versus effective stress on a semilog plot.

Verma and Pruess (1988) presented a power law expression relating permeability to porosity:

$$\frac{k-k_c}{k_0-k_c} = \left(\frac{\phi-\phi_c}{\phi_0-\phi_c}\right)^n \tag{3.53}$$

where  $k_c$  and  $\phi_c$  are asymptotic values of permeability and porosity, respectively, and exponent *n* is a parameter.

A theory of hydrostatic poroelasticity (Jaeger *et al.*, 2007) that accounts for the coupling of rock deformation with fluid flow yields the following expression for porosity changes as a function of effective stress:

$$d\phi = -\left[\frac{1-\phi}{K} - C_r\right]d\tau_m \tag{3.54}$$

where  $C_r$  is rock grain compressibility.

Permeability and porosity are used to scale capillary pressure according to the relation by Leverett (1941):

$$P_{c} = P_{c0} \sqrt{\left(\frac{\phi}{k}\right) \left(\frac{k}{\phi}\right)_{0}}$$
(3.55)

# Verification and Application Examples for Single-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM

We describe three simulations to provide model verification and application examples. The first two, one-dimensional consolidation of a porous medium and a simulation of the Mandel-Cryer effect, are compared to analytical solutions. The third is a match of published results from the literature, a simulation of deformation and fluid circulation in a caldera structure. In this problem, the authors modeled geomechanical processes by coupling two simulators, TOUGH2, which simulates fluid flow and heat transport, and FLAC, which simulates rock mechanics with thermomechanical and hydromechanical interactions.

### 1) One-Dimensional Consolidation

In the one-dimensional consolidation problem (Jaeger *et al.*, 2007), a z-direction stress is applied to the top of a fluid-filled porous rock column, instantaneously inducing a uniaxial deformation and a pore pressure increase. Afterwards, fluid is allowed to drain out of the column top and the induced pore pressure dissipates. An analytical solution to this problem is presented.

We adapt this problem to our flow and stress formulations. Starting from an initial unstressed state of the system where pore pressure and mean stress both equal  $P_i$ , the pore pressure P induced by an applied mean stress is given by

$$P = B\left(\tau_m - P_i\right) + P_i \tag{3.56}$$

where *B* is the Skempton coefficient. For uniaxial strain, mean stress, z-direction stress, and pore pressure are related by:

$$\tau_m = \frac{1}{3} \frac{(1+\nu)}{(1-\nu)} (\tau_{zz} - \alpha P) + \alpha P \tag{3.57}$$

For a constant z-direction stress, the induced pore pressure and mean stress are obtained by solving Equations 3.56 and 3.57. Our simulation is initialized with those results. Fluid leaves the top grid block via a constant pressure fluid sink that is set to the unstressed pore pressure  $P_i$ . The top grid block mean stress is obtained from Equation 3.57 using  $P_i$  and the constant z-direction stress. Finally, porosity varies according to Equation 3.54. Our input parameters are listed in Table 3.1.

Initial porosity	0.09
Permeability, m <sup>2</sup>	$1.0 \cdot 10^{-13}$
Bulk Modulus, GPa	3.33
Poisson's ratio	0.25
Applied load, MPa	3.0
Relaxation pressure, MPa	0.1
Fluid compressibility, 1/Pa	$4.0 \cdot 10^{-10}$
Fluid viscosity, Pa-s	4.7·10 <sup>-04</sup>
Length, m	1000
Number of grid blocks	1000

Table 3.1. Input parameters for one-dimensional consolidation problem.

We ran the simulation for  $10^6$  seconds with  $10^2$  second time steps. Comparisons of pore pressure from simulation and analytical solution are shown in Figure 3.2, with excellent agreement.



Figure 3.2. Simulated pressure (markers) and analytical (solid lines) versus time at 100 m, 500 m, and 900 m for one-dimensional consolidation problem.

#### 2) Mandel-Cryer Effect

A constant compressive force is applied to the top and bottom of a fluid-filled poroelastic material, inducing an instantaneous uniform pore pressure increase and compression. Afterwards, the material is allowed to drain laterally. Because the pore pressure near the edges must decrease due to drainage, the material there becomes less stiff and there is a load transfer to the center, resulting in a further increase in center pore pressure that reaches a maximum and then declines. This pore pressure behavior is called the Mandel-Cryer effect (Mandel, 1953) and Abousleiman *et al.* (1996) present an analytical solution that we compare our simulated results to.

We simulate this problem in two steps. The first step is the application of force that induces the pore pressure increase. We start from an unstrained state where pore pressure and mean stress are both equal ( $\tau_{m,0} = P_0$ ) and impose a greater mean stress ( $\tau_{m,1}$ ) at the top and bottom. These greater stresses compress the system and produce a pore pressure increase from pressure  $P_0$  to pressure  $P_1$ . In the analytical solution, uniaxial stress is assumed, so mean stress and z-direction stress are related by:

$$\tau_m = \frac{\tau_{zz}}{3} \tag{3.58}$$

We next simulate fluid drainage. The system is initially at the above equilibrated state, mean stress  $\tau_{m,1}$  and pore pressure  $P_1$ , and we impose the initial pore pressure on the lateral boundaries to allow the system to drain.

We simulated the Mandel-Cryer effect for a 1000 m square domain that was subdivided into a uniform 200x200 grid. The initial pore pressure and mean stress were 0.1 MPa, the applied mean stress was 5 MPa, the equilibrium pore pressure was 2.18 MPa, and rock properties are shown in Table 3.2. The system drained for 50,000 seconds.

1 1	2
Porosity	0.094
Permeability, m <sup>2</sup>	$1.0 \cdot 10^{-13}$
Young's modulus, GPa	5.0
Poisson's ratio	0.25
Biot's coefficient	1.0

Table 3.2. Rock properties for Mandel-Cryer effect simulation.

We compare pressure at the middle of the system with the analytical solution, shown in Figure 3.3. The simulated results exhibit the pore pressure maximum characteristic of the Mandel-Cryer effect and lie extremely close to the analytical solution. The analytical solution and simulator formulation do differ in that the simulator allows pore pressure to vary in two dimensions whereas in the analytical solution, pressure varies only laterally.



Figure 3.3. Comparison Mandel-Cryer effect analytical solution to simulation for pore pressure located at system center.

# 3) Ground Deformation and Heat Flow in a Caldera Structure

The Phlegrean Fields caldera, located near Naples, Italy, undergoes periodic episodes of volcanic unrest that includes seismic activity and slow ground movement. This unrest is believed to be caused by pressurization of the magma chamber and hot fluid migration. The caldera has been slowly subsiding with periodic short-lived minor uplifts after two major episodes of unrest during 1969-1972 and 1982-1984. Todesco *et al.* (2003) hypothesized that the recent activity was associated with periods of more intense magmatic degassing that would cause larger amounts of fluid to enter the caldera, accompanied by ground deformation, increased pore pressure, and higher temperatures. To verify this, they modeled hydrothermal fluid flow and porous medium deformation using the coupled TOUGH2-FLAC simulator (Rutqvist *et al.*, 2002), with fluid components water and carbon dioxide and the system heated by an influx of hot fluids from the bottom. Heat and fluid transport simulations were first done to match current conditions that were deduced from geochemical data. These results served as initial conditions for the periods of enhanced degassing, simulated by increasing the fluid influx for a given amount of time.

We reran one of their simulations on TOUGH2-CSM using the EOS2 module (Pruess *et al.*, 1999) for water-CO<sub>2</sub> property calculations due to the high injected fluid temperature. The cylindrical simulation domain was 2500 m in diameter and 1500 m in height. The r-z grid was 50x50, grid block height was constant, and grid block radial thickness varied logarithmically. Phlegrean Fields rock properties are shown in Table 3.3.

Young's modulus, GPa	10.0
Poisson's ratio	0.286
Biot's coefficient	1.0
Porosity	0.2
Permeability, m <sup>2</sup>	1.0.10 <sup>-14</sup>
Density, kg-m <sup>-3</sup>	2000.0
Thermal conductivity, W m $^{-1}$ $^{\circ}\mathrm{C}^{-1}$	2.8
Specific heat, J kg <sup>-1</sup> °C <sup>-1</sup>	1000.0

Table 3.3. Rock properties for Phlegrean Fields caldera.

We injected 3000 t d<sup>-1</sup> of water and 1500 t d<sup>-1</sup> of CO<sub>2</sub> at 350 °C for 4000 years uniformly through a 156 m radius area at the bottom. The top was at atmospheric pressure and ambient temperature (20 °C); the outer radial boundary and the rest of the bottom were impermeable and adiabatic. Figure 3.4 shows the TOUGH2-CSM temperature profile at 4000 years; it is similar to the reference one shown in Figure 3.5. The gas saturation profiles, shown in Figures 3.6 and 3.7, are also similar. Fluid injection rates were increased by a factor of ten for the next two years to simulate a period of enhanced degassing and surface uplift was calculated over this time. Figure 3.8 shows TOUGH2-CSM surface uplift and Figure 3.9 the reference surface uplift. TOUGH2-CSM surface uplift was calculated assuming isotropic strain. The maximum value and the rate of decline of the profiles agree with each other.



Figure 3.4. Temperature profile after 4000 years injection from TOUGH2-CSM.



Figure 3.5. Temperature profile after 4000 years injection, adapted from Todesco et al. (2003).



Figure 3.6. CO<sub>2</sub> saturation profile after 4000 years injection from TOUGH2-CSM.



Figure 3.7. CO<sub>2</sub> saturation profile after 4000 years injection, adapted from Todesco et al. (2003).



Figure 3.8. Surface uplift after two years of higher injection rates (10 times) from TOUGH2-CSM.



Figure 3.9. Surface uplift after two years of higher injection rates (10 times), adapted from Todesco et al. (2003).

# **Summary and Conclusions**

We developed a massively parallel reservoir simulator, called TOUGH2-CSM, for modeling THM processes in porous media brine aquifers. We derived, from the fundamental equations describing deformation of porous and fractured elastic media, a momentum conservation equation relating mean stress, pressure, and temperature, and incorporated it alongside the mass and energy conservation equations from the TOUGH2 formulation. In addition, rock properties, namely permeability and porosity, are functions of effective stress and other variables that are obtained from the literature. The starting point for our simulator is the massively parallel TOUGH2-MP code.

We verified the simulator formulation and numerical implementation using analytical solutions and example problems from the literature. For the former, we matched a one-dimensional consolidation problem and a two-dimensional simulation of the Mandel-Cryer effect. For the latter, we compared our results to those from two coupled computer codes, one that simulates fluid flow and heat transport, and the other that simulates rock deformation. We obtained a good match of temperature and gas saturation profiles and surface uplift after injection of hot fluid into a model of a caldera structure. This agreement indicates that our formulation is able to capture THM effects modeled by a coupled simulation with a more detailed handling of rock mechanics.

# Task 4.0: Incorporation of Geochemical Reactions of Selected Important Species

# Literature Survey of Brine and Rock Composition, Reaction Equilibria, and Reaction Rates

We surveyed the compositions of brine and rock from current and completed  $CO_2$  sequestration projects. Below is a table of current and future  $CO_2$  sequestration projects, with many U. S. sequestration projects and some foreign ones. This table will be used to group the large body of existing literature on geochemical reaction modeling and experiments among injected  $CO_2$ , formation brine, and formation rock.

CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration projects	Current or completed	Туре	Selected References
Alberta Program, Canada	Completed	Enhanced coal- bed methane	Wong <i>et al.</i> (2001), Gunter <i>et al.</i> (2005), Mavor and Gunter (2006), Palmer <i>et al.</i> (2007)
Northern Netherland /	Current /	Depleted gas	
Rotterdam	Future	fields	
Otway Project, Australia	Current	Depleted gas fields	Spencer <i>et al.</i> (2006), Stalker <i>et al.</i> (2009)
CO2SINK, Ketzin, Germany	Current	Saline aquifer	Forster et al. (2009)
Zuid-Limburg, Netherland	Future	Enhanced coal- bed methane	
CO2STORE/Sleipner, Norway	Monitor	Saline aquifer	Gaus et al. (2005)
Deccan, India	Future	Flood basalt formation	
Fort Nelson, Canada (Coop with US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration partner:	Current	Saline aquifer	

Table 4.1. Survey of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration projects in the U. S. and worldwide.

Plains)			
In Salah, Algeria	Current	Aquifer below gas reservoir	Ringrose et al. (2008)
Heartland Area Redwater Project, Canada	Future	Brine saturated carbonate	
Weyburn-Midale, Canada	Current	Enhanced oil recovery	Whittaker (2005)
Aquistore, Canada	Future	Saline aquifer	
Frio, United States	Completed	Saline aquifer	Doughty (2005)
Lacq, France	Future	Depleted gas field	
TX Energy, United States	Future	Enhanced oil recovery	
Zama, Canada (Coop with US DOE Regional CO2 sequestration partner: Plains)	Current	Acid gas enhanced oil recovery (CO <sub>2</sub> + SO <sub>2</sub> )	Davison <i>et al.</i> (1996), Michael and Buschkuehle (2006)
ZEROGEN, Queensland, Australia	Future	Saline aquifer	
Arizona Utility and Northern California, United States (US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration partner: Westcarb)	Current	Saline aquifer	
Permian Basin and Paradox Basin, United States (US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub> sequestration partner: Southwest)	Current	Enhanced oil recovery	
San Juan Basin, United States	Current	Enhanced coal-	

(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>		bed methane	
sequestration partner:			
Southwest)			
Farnham Dome, United States			
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>	Current	Solino oquifor	
sequestration partner:	Current	Sanne aquiter	
Southwest)			
Basalt Pilot, United States		Basalt	
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>	Current	formation	
sequestration partner: BigSky)		Tomation	
Kelvin Dome and Nugget			
Sandstone, United States	Enturo	Solino ognifor	
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>	ruture	Sanne aquiter	
sequestration partner: BigSky)			
Decatur Project, United States			
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>	Current	Saline aquifer	
sequestration partner: MGSC)			
Michigan Basin, Appalachian			
Basin, and East Bend, United			
States	Current	Saline aquifer	
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>			
sequestration partner: MRCSP)			
Tuscaloosa and Lowe		Stacked	
Tuscaloosa formations, United		Enhanced oil	
States	Current	recovery and	
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>		saline aquifer	
sequestration partner: Southeast)		same aquitei	
Central Appalachian and Black			
Warrior Basins, United States	Current	Coal seams	
(US DOE Regional CO <sub>2</sub>			

sequestration partner: Southeast)

According to the Climate Change report of Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change of Unites States (IPPC, 2007), the concentration of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere has increased by 31% since the start of the Industrial Revolution in the eighteenth century, from around 280 parts per million by volume (ppmv) in 1850 to around 380 ppmv to date, and is currently rising by about 1.7 ppmv per year. When CO<sub>2</sub> reacts with water content in atmosphere, soil and ocean, carbonic acid and hydrogen ions are formed, increasing the acidity of the whole environment. Around 30-40% of CO<sub>2</sub> emitted to the atmosphere dissolves into the oceans (Millero, 1995), where the reaction with sea water has increased ocean acidity by 0.1 pH units since pre-industrial times (IPCC, 2007). Ocean ecosystems are affected both through acidification and by associated reductions in carbonate ion concentrations (James *et al.*, 2005). Around 20% of anthropogenic carbon dioxide emissions to the atmosphere are absorbed by the terrestrial biosphere (Feely *et al.*, 2004). While how much of these changes is due to the emission of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> is still under debate, many efforts to control CO<sub>2</sub> emission from fossil fuel consumption have already been proposed or practiced.

 $CO_2$  geological sequestration is a viable solution that aims at storing  $CO_2$  from burning of fossil fuels in geological formations. Saline aquifers have the largest capacity among the many options for long-term geological sequestration (IPCC, 2005). Saline aquifers are large underground formations saturated with brine, and are often rich in dissolved minerals. The primary flow and transport mechanisms that control the spread of  $CO_2$  in saline aquifers include (IPCC, 2005):

- 1. Fluid flow (migration) in response to pressure gradients created by the injection process;
- 2. Fluid flow in response to natural hydraulic gradients;
- 3. Buoyancy caused by the density differences between  $CO_2$  and the formation fluids;
- 4. Diffusion;
- 5. Dispersion and fingering caused by formation heterogeneities and mobility contrast between CO<sub>2</sub> and formation fluid;
- 6. Dissolution into the formation fluid;
- 7. Mineralization;
- 8. Pore space (relative permeability) trapping;
- 9. Adsorption of CO<sub>2</sub> onto organic material.

The effectiveness of geological storage depends on a combination of structural, physical and geochemical trapping mechanisms.

Stratigraphic and Structural Trapping: Initially, physical trapping of  $CO_2$  below lowpermeability seals (caprocks), such as very-low-permeability shale or salt beds, is the principal means to store  $CO_2$  in geological formations.

**Solubility Trapping:** Solubility trapping occurs when  $CO_2$  dissolves in formation brine in significant quantities.

**Mineral Trapping:** Dissolved  $CO_2$  changes the pH of the formation brine and can trigger mineral reactions. These reactions involve not only dissolution of carbonates (a fast reaction), but also conversion of silicates (a slow reaction). The latter, after hundreds to thousands of years,

would eventually convert  $CO_2$  into rock minerals. A good understanding of the geochemical reactions between  $CO_2$  and dissolved minerals is important for the assessment of the effectiveness of long-term  $CO_2$  storage in geological formations. Chemical reactions not only affect the material balance of  $CO_2$  but also change the porosity and permeability of the rock through dissolution and precipitation processes.

A variety of software packages for numerical modeling have been developed for fluid flows coupled with geochemical reactions, including TOUGHREACT (Xu *et al.*, 2006b), PHREEQC (Parkhurst *et al.*, 1999) and GEOCHEMIST'S WORKBENCH (Bethke, 2002). In order to obtain a good understanding of the kinetics of the dissolution of  $CO_2$  in water and the subsequent chemical reactions, we investigate the existing literature on geochemical reaction modeling associated with worldwide  $CO_2$  geological sequestration projects. Our survey includes the main minerals in the brine and the rock at specific sequestrated sites and the modeling software employed.

Johnson *et al.* (2001) conducted and analyzed three distinct Sleipner simulations (XSH, CSH, and DSH models) within a single spatial domain representing the near-field sequestration environment at Sleipner, by means of an integrated toolbox: NUFT (integrated software package containing five modules facilitating numerical simulation of multiphase/multicomponent flow and reactive transport), GEMBOCHS (integrating thermodynamic/kinetic database and dedicated software library together to facilitate generation of application-specific data files for geochemical reaction software), and Xtool (GUI-driven graphics utility for extracting and visualizing a broad range of output data from NUFT simulations). Then they presented the adopted site-specific 2-D spatial domain and hydrologic/compositional data, and described the thermodynamic/kinetic data used to represent geochemical reaction between CO<sub>2</sub>, water and lithologic minerals (quartz, K-feldspar, plagioclase, muscovite and phlogopite). Finally they concluded that calcite was expected to play a minor role in mineral trapping relative to siderite, magnesite, and their solid solutions in the Sleipner sequestrated site.

For the same CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration site, Sleipner field (North Sea), Gaus *et al.* (2003 and 2005) used PHREEQC (V2.6) to model the reactive transport of the  $CO_2$ -injection project where  $CO_2$  is injected in the Utsira Sands underlying the Nordland Shale cap rock. The Davies approach was used for the aqueous speciation calculation, and the LLNL.dat database was adapted for thermodynamic calculation. They investigated kinetic batch modeling in short term and long term. In the short term, pH decreased after contact of the formation water with the CO<sub>2</sub> occurred. This resulted in the dissolution of calcite, which stabilized the pH at 4.5 after approximately 9 years. There were two cases for the long term geochemical reaction modeling: (1) All plagioclase was present as albite, and the dominant reaction in the system over the 15,000 year time period was the dissolution of albite with the subsequent formation of kaolinite. After approximately 10000 years, this reaction slows down due to the decreasing  $Ca^{2+}$  concentration in the formation water and the formation of dawsonite; (2) All plagioclase was present as albite and anorthite, the alteration of anorthite dominates the feldspar reactions leading to the formation of calcite and kaolinite, and this reaction was completed after approximately 5000 years when all anorthite has disappeared.

Nghiem *et al.* (2004) presented a study including 1D, 2D and 3D models of  $CO_2$  injection in aquifers using the commercial GEM-GHG code. This code is capable of modeling convective and dispersive flows, calculating phase equilibrium for reactions between the oil, gas and aqueous phases, and chemical equilibrium or kinetic dissolution and precipitation reactions between minerals. A method for solving all equations simultaneously in a more robust way is described. A simpler set of reactions was chosen for the 3D models than for the 1D or 2D model.

Frangeul *et al.* (2004) presented a simulation of  $CO_2$  injection at Sleipner using GEM-GHG. The simulation was for a time period of 5000 years and included 3D convective flows induced by density differences, but used homogeneous reservoir properties and a very simplified mineral assemblage containing only calcite and dolomite.

Audigane *et al.* (2006 and 2007) used a conceptual model based on the Sleipner dataset, with different and realistic mineralogy implemented for the sand and shale layers to establish a 2D vertical model with a radial mesh geometry containing 22 layers, including 4 semi-permeable shale layers. Batch reaction and reactive transport simulations were performed with TOUGHREACT software for a long storage period (10,000 years). The impact of CO<sub>2</sub> on the minerals (albite, calcite, chalcedony, chlorite, muscovite, kaolinite, K-feldspar, siderite) was simulated by batch geochemical modeling. For batch reaction modeling with CO<sub>2</sub> injection in the shale, the overall reactivity resulted in an absolute porosity reduction of approximately 0.01 (from 0.1025 initially down to 0.093 after 10,000 years). For batch reaction modeling with CO<sub>2</sub> injection in the sand, only 0.002 percent of the albite and 0.0002 percent of the chlorite reacted after 10,000 years. Four main types of interactions (calcite dissolution and precipitation, albite alteration, chlorite alteration, muscovite alteration) were identified for 10,000 years' simulation.

Secondly, there are a lot of literature focusing on geochemical reaction modeling in Alberta Basin and Weyburn oil field Canada. Gunter *et al.* (2000) used a geochemical computer model (PATHARC) to compute the interaction of industrial waste streams comprising  $CO_2$ ,  $H_2SO_4$  and  $H_2S$  with the minerals in typical carbonate and sandstone aquifers from the Alberta Basin. They modeled the geochemical reactions associated with  $CO_2$ ,  $H_2SO_4$  and  $H_2S$  disposal into the Nisku and Glauconitic Sandstone aquifers. Then they concluded that siliciclastic aquifers appeared to be a better host for mineral trapping than carbonate aquifers, especially with regard to  $CO_2$ . Carbonate aquifers might be more prone to leakage due to high  $CO_2$  pressures generated by reaction with  $H_2SO_4$  and  $H_2S$ .

Xu *et al.* (2004a) performed batch reaction modeling of the geochemical evolution of three different aquifer mineral compositions (glauconitic sandstone from the Alberta Sedimentary Basin, a proxy for a sediment from the United States Gulf Coast and a dunite, an essentially monomineralic rock consisting of olivine) in the presence of  $CO_2$  at high pressure by TOUGHREACT. The modeling considered three important factors affecting  $CO_2$  sequestration: (1) the kinetics of chemical interactions between the host rock minerals and the aqueous phase, (2)  $CO_2$  solubility dependence on pressure, temperature and salinity of the system, and (3) redox processes that could be important in deep subsurface environments. Their main conclusions were as follows: for glauconitic sandstone, most  $CO_2$  is trapped as ankerite and siderite, with a minor amount as dolomite and dawsonite. For the Gulf Coast case, the major trapping minerals are dawsonite and ankerite, with minor ones calcite and siderite, and for the olivine rock (dunite)

case, the trapping minerals are magnesite and siderite. The mineral-trapping capacity can be comparable with or be larger than that of solubility trapping.

Cantucci *et al.* (2009) used PRHEEQC (V2.14) Software Package with a modified thermodynamic database and a correction for supercritical  $CO_2$  fugacity to perform kinetic modeling. This geochemical modeling procedure was based on the dataset provided by the Weyburn Project, which includes: a) bulk mineralogy of the Marly and Vuggy reservoirs; b) selected pre- and post-CO<sub>2</sub> injection water samples of Midale Beds and c) mean gas-cap composition at the wellheads. The main results can be summarized, as follows: 1) the calculated pre-injection chemical composition of the Midale Beds brine is consistent with the analytical data of the waters collected in 2000; 2) the main reservoir reactions (CO<sub>2</sub> and carbonate dissolution) take place within the first year of simulation, 3) the temporal evolution of the chemical features of the fluids in the Weyburn reservoir suggests that CO2 can be safely stored by solubility (as CO<sub>2</sub> (aq)) and mineral trapping (via dawsonite precipitation).

Raistrick *et al.* (2009) carried a geochemical modeling based on the samples of the fluid and gas of four wells in part of the reservoir volume targeted by  $CO_2$  injection by means of Geochemical Reaction Pathway Modeling Software GWB (Geochemists Workbench React). The measured changes of chemical data in the selected monitoring well were simulated over 750 days following the arrival of injected  $CO_2$ . The modeling timescale was extended to investigate the fate of  $CO_2$  over post injection timescales, which showed that alteration of K-feldspar and other silicate minerals present in the Weyburn reservoir will lead to further storage of injected  $CO_2$  in the aqueous phase and as carbonate minerals.

Thirdly, a lot of  $CO_2$  sequestration projects have been carried out in West Texas, Colorado Plateau, Williston Basin, Ohio and Gulf Coast in United States. Geochemical reaction modeling has been performed to investigate the fate of  $CO_2$  injection in these sites. Wellman *et al.* (2003) compared simulator predictions to laboratory core flooding experiments to evaluate model efficacy. The modeling code used was a combination of TOUGH2 simulator (groundwater/brine and heat flow simulation) with the chemistry code TRANS (chemical reactive transport). Five types of rock (pure calcite, pure quartz, quartz and carbonates, quartz and evaporates, dolomite and anhydrite) from the Seminole field in west Texas were featured in TRANSTOUGH model simulations. Simulation results indicated that varying brine pH and alkalinity caused 0 to 5 percent differences on the resultant volumetric mineral fractions.

White *et al.* (2005) performed geochemical reaction modeling of  $CO_2$  injection into the White Rim Sandstone by the reactive chemical simulator ChemTOUGH. Results indicated that 1000 years after the 30 year injection period began, approximately 21% of the injected  $CO_2$  was permanently sequestered as a mineral, 52% was beneath the ground surface as a gas or dissolved in the groundwater and 17% had leaked to the surface and leakage to the surface was continuing.

Zerai *et al.* (2006) used Geochemist's Workbench to conduct equilibrium, path-of-reaction and kinetic modeling of  $CO_2$ -brine-mineral reactions in the Rose Run Sandstone, one of Ohio's deep saline aquifers, to investigate the factors that were likely to influence the capacity of this formation to trap injected  $CO_2$  as solid carbonate mineral phases. Three types of mineral

assemblages were investigated for the geochemical reaction: a carbonate assemblage composed of calcite, dolomite and siderite; a sandstone assemblage composed of quartz, K-feldspar, kaolinite, albite, annite, and siderite; and a mixed assemblage (sandstone-carbonate), which represents the aquifer as a whole. Results indicated that the stability of carbonate rocks is controlled by the brine-to-rock ratio, the pH of the system, the fugacity of  $CO_2$ , and the kinetic rate of dissolution.

Bacona *et al.* (2009) conducted 2D reactive transport modeling based on the data from Rose Run formation and Copper Ridge formation by STOMP-WCS-R (water, CO<sub>2</sub>, salt and reactions) and add-on module of ECKEChem (Equilibrium-Conservation-Kinetic Equation Chemistry). Fourteen carbonate, silicate and sulfate aqueous species, and four mineral species were considered (88% dolomite, 8% quartz, 2% calcite, and 2% anhydrite by volume for dolomite layers and 88% quartz, 8% dolomite, 2% calcite, and 2% anhydrite by volume for sandstone layers). It was shown that for a 330,000 metric ton injection of CO<sub>2</sub> with a 100-year recovery period, mineral dissolution/precipitation does not significantly affect the rate of carbon sequestration in, or the formation properties of, the Rose Run and Copper Ridge formations.

Sorensen *et al.* (2009) used the geochemical code PHREEQC, whose thermodynamic database was adjusted with SUPRCRT92 code, to perform numerical modeling. The modeling was based on selected rock samples from several different formations of the Williston Basin, including Bakken, Broom Creek, Madison, and Winnipeg. XRD analysis was performed on each sample after  $CO_2$  exposure to determine the mineralogical components of the samples and to evaluate any physical or chemical changes. It was reported that anhydrite, calcite, dolomite, forsterite, and quartz are the dominant phases. The results suggested that laboratory experimental results could be reasonably correlated to some aspects of geochemical modeling.

Berger *et al.* (2009) used React 7.0.4 and PHREEQC 2.13.2 (for kinetic and equilibrium models), and TOUGHREACT (for reaction modeling with carbonate and silicate minerals) to conduct geochemical reaction modeling based on data from brine and freshwater samples associated with EOR in the Loudon oil field and Illinois Basin Decatur project. The reaction modeling of Loudon oil field indicated an increase in the reservoir permeability from reservoir property changes. Predictive models for the Illinois Basin Decatur project were helpful to understand potential reactions in the subsurface.

Xu *et al.* (2003) developed a reactive fluid flow and geochemical transport numerical model for evaluating long term  $CO_2$  disposal in deep geologic formations, and they performed numerical simulations utilizing TOUGHREACT software for a commonly encountered Gulf Coast sediment under natural and CO2 injection conditions to analyze the impact of  $CO_2$  immobilization through carbonate precipitation. They concluded from the simulations that the  $CO_2$  mineral trapping capability after 10,000 years was comparable to  $CO_2$  dissolution in pore waters. The addition of  $CO_2$  mass as secondary carbonates to the solid matrix decreased porosity results in a significant decrease in permeability. The simulation was partially validated by field observations of the diagenesis of Gulf Coast sediments, and in particular, sandstones of the Frio formation of Texas.

Then, simulations using CMG's GEM module were carried out by Ozah *et al.* (2005) for 10,000 years to investigate the precipitation/dissolution reactions that have the potential for mineral

storage of CO2 and quantified the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> stored as minerals for a particular case. The simplification of mineral reactions was the same as discussed by Kumar *et al.* (2005). The results of both 2D and 3D simulations showed that in 10,000 years significant calcite precipitation took place simultaneously with anorthite dissolution. The pH of the brine in the aquifer decreased and the concentration of  $H^+$  ions increased during this period. This caused anorthite to dissolve into brine and thus liberate Ca<sup>2+</sup> ions over long periods of time even after the injection of CO<sub>2</sub> was stopped.

In 2004b and 2007, Xu *et al.* developed 1D and 2D numerical simulations for the injection of  $CO_2$ ,  $H_2S$  and  $SO_2$  mixtures in a sandstone-shale sequence using hydrogeologic properties and mineral compositions commonly encountered in Gulf Coast sediments. Simulations were performed with the reactive fluid flow and geochemical transport code TOUGHREACT to analyze mineral alteration, acid-gas immobilization through precipitation, and changes in porosity. Results indicated that for short time periods (10,000 years in present simulations) shale plays a limited role in mineral alteration and sequestration of gases within a sandstone horizon. The co-injection of  $SO_2$  results in a different pH distribution, mineral alteration patterns, and  $CO_2$  mineral sequestration than the co-injection of  $H_2S$  or injection of  $CO_2$  alone.

Geochemical reaction modeling was performed by Kharaka *et al.* (2006) to evaluate gas-waterrock interactions in sedimentary basins of Frio formation during  $CO_2$  sequestration. The results of geochemical modeling, using modified SOLMINEQ, indicated that buffering by dissolution of calcite and Fe oxyhydroxides limited the drop of brine pH. Then, a kinetic model of Fe release from the solid to aqueous phase was developed for the Frio-I Brine Pilot (Xu *et al.*, 2010), which could reproduce the observed increases in aqueous Fe concentration. The trend of Fe concentrations decreasing in brine samples due to carbonate precipitation could be captured by our modeling. Long-term simulations showed that all injected  $CO_2$  could ultimately be sequestered as carbonate minerals for Frio-I Brine Pilot.

Finally, we investigated the study of geochemical reaction in the other parts of the word including Italy, France, Japan and Brazil. Cipolli *et al.* (2004) investigated the feasibility of  $CO_2$  sequestration through injection into deep aquifers hosted by the ultramafic-serpentinitic rocks of the Gruppo di Voltri (Genova, Italy). A total of 25 samples were collected from the 15 springs of high pH identified in the Gruppo di Voltri area and chemical characteristics of waters interacting with ultramafic rocks and serpentinite were surveyed. The irreversible mass exchange that presumably takes place during high-pressure  $CO_2$  injection into a deep aquifer hosted in serpentinitic rocks and ultramafites had a high  $CO_2$  sequestration capacity, mainly through mineral fixation as magnesite and subordinately through solubility trapping.

Prior to the CO<sub>2</sub> greenhouse gas injection in the south-west of Nagaoka City, Niigata Prefecture, Japan, Zwingmann *et al.* (2005) conducted geochemical reaction modeling of CO<sub>2</sub> injection using the geochemical modeling code EQ3/6. The injection formation is the sedimentary marine Haizume Formation (Pleistocene) in the Uonuma Group, which is covered by a mudstone seal. The formation is mainly composed of quartz, plagioclase, feldspar, pyroxene, and clays (smectite, chlorite). The sandstone shows minor consolidation and grain size is medium to coarse sand. The modeling results showed a high reactivity of the minerals in the CO<sub>2</sub> rich environment

and high mineral conversion rate within the formation. At the final state, approximately 23 mol of  $CO_2$  were taken into 1 kg of formation water and more than 90% of this was stored within carbonate minerals. In the simulation, some uncertainty was associated with the time scale and a more detailed investigation was planned and addressed accurate evaluation.

Andre' *et al.* (2007) conducted numerical simulation of fluid-rock chemical interactions at the supercritical CO<sub>2</sub>-liquid interface during CO<sub>2</sub> injection into a carbonate reservoir of the Dogger aquifer (Paris Basin, France). Modified TOUGHREACT software and SCALE2000 software were employed for reactive transport simulation and batch geochemical modeling. They presented the numerical results of two CO<sub>2</sub> injection scenarios, first with CO<sub>2</sub>-saturated water and second with pure supercritical CO<sub>2</sub>. The simulation results confirmed that the high reactivity of CO<sub>2</sub>-saturated water, which can dramatically damage the reservoir structure, and supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> injection appeared to be weakly reactive with a limited modification of well injectivity.

Thibeau *et al.* (2009) carried out the geochemical assessment of injection of  $CO_2$  into the Rousse depleted gas reservoir of the Lacq- $CO_2$  pilot, the first French pilot. The geochemical modeling was performed in three steps: (1) combination of x-ray diffraction and fluorescence data in order to establish the initial mineralogy; (2) construction of a batch thermodynamic model to evaluate the effect of  $CO_2$  injection by means of CHESS software; (3) using CMG's GEM to develop a 3D coupled reservoir and geochemical model to investigate the variation of reactive processes in space and time.

Experimental and numerical modeling studies performed (Ketzer *et al.* 2009) in sandstones of the saline aquifer of the Rio Bonito Formation, Parana Basin are presented. The geochemical reaction modeling software (PHREEQC Version 2.8) is employed for geochemical interaction modeling of the water-rock-CO<sub>2</sub> system through equilibrium and kinetic batch modeling. The simulation results showed that the studied sandstones of the Rio Bonito Formation consist of good reservoirs for CO<sub>2</sub> storage because of its stable mineralogy (quartzarenites and subarkoses) and mineral integrity of the reservoirs.

Location	Software	Reference
Sleipner, North Sea	NUFT,SUPCRT92	Johnson <i>et al.</i> (2001)
Sleipner, North Sea	PHREEQC V2.6	Gaus et al. (2003, 2005)
Sleipner, North Sea	TOUGHREACT	Audigane et al. (2006)
Sleipner, North Sea	TOUGHREACT	Audigane, et al. (2007)
Sleipner, North Sea	Chess module	Lagneau, et al. (2005)
Sleipner, North Sea	PHREEQC	Wigand, et al. (2008)
Alberta Basin, Canada	PATHARC	Gunter, et al. (2000)
Alberta Basin, Canada	TOUGHREACT	Xu <i>et al</i> . (2004a)
Weyburn oilfield, Canada	Solmineq 88	Emberley et al. (2005)
Weyburn oilfield, Canada	PHREEQC	Cantucci et al. (2009)
Weyburn oilfield, Canada	Geochemists Workbench	Raistrick et al. (2009)
West Texas, US	TOUGH2	Wellman et al. (2003)
Colorado Plateau, US	ChemTOUGH	White, et al. (2005)

Table 4.2. Summary of geochemical reaction software for worldwide CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration sites.

Rose Run Sandstone, Ohio	Geochemist's Workbench	Zerai et al. (2006)
Rose Run, Copper Ridge	STOMP, ECKEChem	Bacona <i>et al.</i> (2009)
Williston Basin	PHREEQC, SUPRCRT92	Sorensen et al. (2009)
Illinois Basin	PHREEQC, TOUGHREACT	Berger <i>et al.</i> (2009)
US Gulf Coast	TOUGHREACT	Xu <i>et al.</i> (2003, 2006b, 2007, 2010)
US Gulf Coast	GEM module of CMG	Ozah <i>et al.</i> (2005)
US Gulf Coast	SOLMINEQ	Kharaka, <i>et al.</i> (2006)
Niigata Basin, Japan	Software package EQ3/6;	Zwingmann et al. (2005)
Southern Brazil	PHREEQC	Ketzer, et al. (2009)
Genova, Italy	EQ3/6 Package	Cipoli <i>et al.</i> (2004)
Northern Italy	TOUGHREACT	Gherardi et al. (2007)
Paris Basin, France	TOUGHREACT	Andre et al. (2007)
Paris Basin, France	Crunch Code	Credoz <i>et al.</i> (2009)
Lacq CO2 pilot, French	Chess, GEM	Thibeau et al. (2009)

Below is a comparison of the geochemical reaction software used in out literature survey.

Software	<b>Batch Modeling</b>	Chemical Equilibrium	Fluid Flow
TOUGHREACT	Fully-coupled	Fully-coupled	Fully-coupled
GEM Module	Limited	Fully-coupled	Fully-coupled
PHREEQC	Fully-coupled	Fully-coupled	
EQ3/6 Package		Fully-coupled	
Geochemist Workbench	Fully-coupled	Fully-coupled	
SUPRCRT92		Fully-coupled	
Chess software	Fully-coupled	Fully-coupled	

Table 4.3. Comparisons of geochemical reaction modeling software.

According to Table 4.3, kinetic modeling and reactive transport flow are fully coupled in TOUGHREACT code; other software has limited capability in coupling reaction kinetics and equilibrium with fluid flow and transport. We will use TOUGHREACT to perform reactive transport modeling and we will categorize the formation rock and brine compositions into representative groups and develop a kinetic model for mineral dissolution and precipitation.

#### Availability of rock-forming chemical components for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration

Mineral trapping of carbon dioxide in deep aquifers depends on the quantity and reactivity of metal oxide components that can react with carbon dioxide to form solid carbonates with low solubility. Xu *et al.* (2001) surveyed the oxide components and their abundance in the earth's crust. Only a limited number of rock forming metal oxides have the capability of trapping carbon dioxide via geochemical reactions. In the order of availability, these oxides are FeO, CaO, MgO, MnO, SrO and BaO. Theses minerals come from common igneous and metamorphic rocks in combination with silica and sometimes with alumina at high temperatures. At a specific

environment, these primary rock forming minerals decompose at various rates, and react with carbon dioxide to form secondary solid carbonates.

The properties of rock and the rock forming minerals determine the abundance and availability of sequestering oxide components. Xu *et al.* (2001) summarized and divided those minerals into classes with similar crystal structures in Table 4.4.

Framework Silicates	Ortho and Ring Silicates	Chain Silicates	Sheet silicates
Plagioclase	Olivine Group	Pyroxene group	Mica Group
Barium feldspars	Garnet group	Amphibole group	Septechlorite group
Sodalite	Epidote group	Wollastonite	Chlorite group
Cancrinite	Melilite group	Pectolite	Clay Minerals
Scapolite	Calcium	Rhodonite	Talc
Zeolite Group	Borosilicates	Pyrox-manganite	Stilpnomelate
	Metamorphic minerals		Serpentine
			Apophyllite
			Prehnite

Table 4.4. Category of rock forming minerals with similar crystal structures.

The abundance of a given mineral or mineral group depends both on the bulk composition of the rock and the nature of its formation. Xu *et al.* (2001) summarized the major mineral series within each group and calculated the maximum quantity of carbon dioxide that could be sequestered by each mineral, which is shown in Table 4.5. The potential values were calculated by assuming complete alteration of the primary minerals. The majority of the minerals mentioned in Table 4.5 are solid solutions whose compositions vary depending on the bulk composition and prior history of the host rock. Some of the mineral groups are represented only by typical examples rather than being comprehensive, such as the zeolites, which contain many different structures. The minerals containing an essential component with low crustal abundance and minor non-essential substitutive components in solid solutions were omitted in the survey.

Mineral Name	Mineral Formula	Potential CO <sub>2</sub> Fixed (kg/m3 mineral)
Plagioclase (anorthite)	Ca[Al <sub>2</sub> Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>8</sub> ]	436.4
Ba-Feldspar-Celsian	Ba[Al <sub>2</sub> Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>8</sub> ]	398.2
Sodalite Group		
Hauyne	$Ca_4[Al_6Si_6O_{24}](SO_4)$	383.8
Cancrinite	Ca <sub>1.5</sub> [Al <sub>6</sub> Si <sub>6</sub> O <sub>24</sub> ](CO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>1.5</sub> 1.5H2O	132.5
Scapolite(meionite)	$Ca_4[Al_6Si_6O_{24}](CO_3)$	387.3
Zeolites Group		
Heulandite	$Ca_4Na[Al_9Si_{27}O_{72}]$ · 24H <sub>2</sub> O	138.4
Laumontite	$Ca[Al_2Si_4O_{12}]$ $6H_2O$	208.1
Scolecite	$Ca[Al_2Si_3O_{10}]$ $3H_2O$	254.9
Chabazite	$(Ca, Na_2)[Al_2Si_4O_{12}] GH_2O$	176.5
Thomsonite	$NaCa_2[Al_5Si_5O_{20}]$ $6H_2O$	258.7
Olivine (forsterite-fayalite)	$Mg_2SiO_4$ -Fe <sub>2</sub> SiO <sub>4</sub>	2014.7-1896.3
Garnet Group		
Almandine	$Fe(II)_3Al_2Si_3O_{12}$	1144.7
Andradite	Ca3Fe(III)2Si3O12	1002.3
Grossular	Ca3Al2Si3O12	1053.1

Table 4.5. Carbon dioxide sequestration potential of major rock forming minerals.

Pyrope	Mg <sub>3</sub> Al <sub>2</sub> Si <sub>3</sub> O <sub>12</sub>	1164.9
Hydrogrossular	$Ca_3Al_2Si_2O_8(OH)_4$	974.8
Epidote Group		
Epidote	Ca <sub>2</sub> Fe(III)Al <sub>2</sub> OOH[Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>7</sub> ][SiO <sub>4</sub> ]	628.8
Melilite Group		
Gehlenite	$Ca_2[Al_2SiO_7]$	972.4
Akermanite	$Mg_2[AlSi_2O_7]$	1423.0
Ca Borosilicates-Datolite	CaB[SiO <sub>4</sub> ](OH)	825.6
Staurolite	$(Fe(II),Mg)_2(AI,Fe(III))_9O_6[SiO_4]_2(O,OH)_4$	394.7
Vesuvianite	$Ca_{10}(Fe(II),Mg)_2(AI,Fe(III))AI_3O_2[SiO_4]_2(OH)_4$	1167.0
Chloritoid	$(Mg,Fe)_2Al_4[Si_2O_7][SiO_4]_8(OH)_4$	629.8
Lawsonite	$CaAl_2(OH)_2[Si_2O_7]H_2O$	422.7
Pumpellyite	$Ca_4(Mg,Fe(II))(Al,Fe(III))_5(OH)_3[Si_2O_7]_2[SiO_4]_2 2H_2O$	735.6
Cordierite	$Al_3(Mg,Fe(II))_2[Si_5O_{18}]$	749.4
Pyroxene group		
Enstatite	$(Mg,Fe)_2Si_2O_6$	1404.2
Diopside	CaMgSi <sub>2</sub> O <sub>6</sub>	1334.3
Hedenbergite	Ca(Mg,Fe(II))Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>6</sub>	1290.3
Augite	$(Ca, Mg, Fe(II), Al)_2(Si, Al)_2O_6$	1306.3
Pigeonite	(Mg,Fe(II),Ca)(Mg,Fe(II)),Fe(III),Al)Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>6</sub>	1345.4
Amphibole Group		
Anthophyllite Cummingtonite	(Mg,Fe(II),Fe(III)) <sub>5-7</sub> Al <sub>0-2</sub> [Si <sub>6-8</sub> Al <sub>2-0</sub> O <sub>22</sub> ](OH) <sub>2</sub>	1169.5-1041.8
Common Hornblende	Ca <sub>2</sub> Na <sub>0.1</sub> (Mg,Fe(II)) <sub>3.5</sub> (Al,Fe(III)) <sub>2.0</sub> [Si <sub>6.8</sub> Al <sub>2.0</sub> O <sub>22</sub> ](O,OH) <sub>2</sub>	1000.4
Calcium Amphiboles-tremolite	Ca <sub>2</sub> Na <sub>0-1</sub> (Mg,Fe(II)) <sub>3-5</sub> (Al,Fe(III)) <sub>2-0</sub> [Si <sub>6-8</sub> Al <sub>2-0</sub> O <sub>22</sub> ](O,OH) <sub>2</sub>	1119.3
Alkali Amphiboles-glaucophane	Na <sub>2-3</sub> Ca <sub>0-1</sub> (Mg,Fe(II)) <sub>5-3</sub> (Al,Fe(III)) <sub>0-2</sub> Si <sub>7-8</sub> Al <sub>1-0</sub> O <sub>22</sub> ](O,OH) <sub>2</sub>	496.3
Wollastonite	CaSiO <sub>3</sub>	1097.1
Pectolite	Ca <sub>2</sub> NaH[SiO <sub>3</sub> ] <sub>3</sub>	761.1
Mica group		
Glauconite	(K,Na,Ca) <sub>1.2-2.0</sub> (Fe(III),A1,Fe(II),Mg) <sub>4.0</sub> [Si <sub>7-7.6</sub> A1 <sub>1-0.4</sub> O <sub>20</sub> ](OH) <sub>4</sub> nH <sub>2</sub> O	61.97
Phlogopite	$K_2(Mg,Fe(II))_6[Si_6Al_2O_{20}](OH)_4$	881.8
Biotite	K <sub>2</sub> (Mg,Fe(II)) <sub>6-4</sub> (Fe(III),Al) <sub>0-2</sub> [SiAl <sub>2-3</sub> O <sub>20</sub> ](OH) <sub>4-2</sub>	671.0
Margarite	$Ca_2Al_4[Si_4Al_4O_{20}](OH)_4$	328.6
Septechlorite Group		
Serpentine	$Mg_6Si_4O_{10}(OH)_8$	1232.7
Greenalite	$Fe(II)_6Si_4O_{10}(OH)_8$	1140.1
Chlorite Group	$(Mg,Al,Fe(II))_{12}[(Si,Al)_8O_{20}](OH)_{16}$	923.4
Clay Minerals		
Illite	K <sub>1-1.5</sub> (Fe(III),Al,Fe(II),Mg) <sub>4.0</sub> [Si <sub>7-6.5</sub> Al <sub>1-1.5</sub> O <sub>20</sub> ](OH) <sub>4</sub>	78.42
Smectite	(1/2Ca,Na) <sub>0.7</sub> (Al,Mg,Fe) <sub>4</sub> (Si,Al) <sub>8</sub> O <sub>20</sub> (OH) <sub>4</sub> nH <sub>2</sub> O	161.2
Talc	$Mg_6[Si_8O_{20}](OH)_4$	1061.2
Stilpnomelane	(K,Na,Ca) <sub>0-1.4</sub> (Fe(III),Fe(II),Mg,Al,Mn) <sub>5.9-8.2</sub> -[Si <sub>8</sub> O <sub>20</sub> ](OH) <sub>4</sub> (O,OH,H <sub>2</sub> O) <sub>3.6-8.5</sub>	266.5
Prehnite	$Ca_2Al[AlSi_3O_{10}](OH)_2$	626.9

#### Formation Categories for CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration and Relative Kinetic Parameters

The mineral alteration caused by geochemical reactions between carbon dioxide and rock forming minerals is very slow under aquifer conditions and is typically not amenable to experimental study. Numerical modeling is necessary to investigate the geochemical effects of long-term  $CO_2$  storage in deep aquifers. The chemical composition of geologic formations varies greatly from one sequestration site to another. Thus, we surveyed the mineral composition and equilibrium data for different sequestration sites with 4 different formation types.

Sandstone Formations: Geochemical reaction modeling between carbon dioxide and sandstone formation has been carried out for sandstone aquifer from the Alberta Sedimentary Basin, US Gulf Coast sediments and Frio-I Brine Pilot in US Gulf Coast (Xu *et al.*, 2004a, 2010), Rose-Run sandstone reservoir in Ohio (Zerai *et al.*, 2006), sandstone bed of Pleistocene Haizume Formation at Minami-Nagaoka gas field of Japan (Mito *et al.*, 2008), Bunter Sandstone

Formation from Europe (Wigand *et al.*, 2008), sandstone reservoirs of the Rio Bonito Formation (Permian) at Paranά Basin of southern Brazil (Ketzer *et al.*, 2009).

Xu *et al.* (2004a) carried out a batch-type geochemical reaction modeling between  $CO_2$  and glauconitic sandstone from the Alberta Sedimentary Basin as a potential host for  $CO_2$  sequestration. The glauconitic sandstone is a medium- to fine-grained litharenite. The average mineral composition is 87% quartz, 2% K-feldspar, 1% plagioclase, 5% glauconite, 2% kaolinite, 1% calcite, 1% dolomite, and 1% siderite. The average porosity is 12%. In their study, the mineral composition was modified to more closely reflect that observed in the formation, and Fe (III) reduction in glauconite was incorporated in the model. They estimated a representative glauconite chemical composition and thermodynamic properties from descriptions of the mineralogical compositions of glauconite and its paragenesis. The oligoclase is also incorporated as a solid solution of plagioclase and the thermodynamic properties of oligoclase are calculated from calorimetric studies of plagioclase solid solutions. The initial mineral abundances used by them is given in Table 4.6 and the kinetic parameters used in the simulation are given later in Table 4.10.

Mineral	Chemical composition	Volume (%)					
Primary mineral							
quartz	SiO <sub>2</sub>	71.28					
K-feldspar	KAlSi <sub>3</sub> O <sub>8</sub>	1.76					
kaolinite	$Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4$	1.76					
calcite	CaCO <sub>3</sub>	0.88					
dolomite	$CaMg(CO_3)_2$	0.88					
siderite	FeCO <sub>3</sub>	0.88					
illite	$K_{0.6}Mg_{0.25}Al_{1.8}(Al_{0.5}Si_{3.5}O_{10})(OH)_2$	2.64					
glauconite	$K_{1.5}Mg_{0.5}Fe_{2.5}Fe_{0.5}AlSi_{7.5}O_{20}(OH)_2$	4.4					
kerogen-O	$C_{52}H_{82}O_{40}$	2.64					
oligoclase	$CaNa_4Al_6Si_{14}O_{40}$	0.88					
porosity	-	12					
total	-	100					
Secondary N	Secondary Mineral						
albite-low	NaAlSi <sub>3</sub> O <sub>8</sub>						
Na-smectite	$Na_{0.290}Mg_{0.26}Al_{1.77}Si_{3.97}O_{10}(OH)_2$						
Ca-smectite	$Ca_{0.145}Mg_{0.26}Al_{1.77}Si_{3.97}O_{10}(OH)_2$						
goethite	FeOOH						
dawsonite	NaAlCO <sub>3</sub> (OH) <sub>2</sub>						

 Table 4.6. List of initial mineral volume fractions and potential secondary mineral for the glauconitic sandstone.

They also did a batch geochemical simulation study on Gulf Coast sediments. The mineralogy is similar to that commonly encountered in sedimentary basins. The principal reservoir-quality sandstones within Gulf Coast sediments are respectively, the Frio, the Vicksberg and the Wilcox formations, all of which are found within the Lower Tertiary. Of the three formations, the Frio was chosen as a representative candidate for the sequestration of supercritical  $CO_2$ . According to the study, the Frio shows the greatest variation in mineral composition ranging from poorly

sorted fine-grained feldspathic litharenites to lithic arkoses to fine-grained lithic arkoses and subarkoses. The approximate mean composition of the Frio in the Middle Texas region of the Gulf Coast was chosen in the study. The composition is representative of a quartzose lithic arkose with 56% quartz (by weight), 28% feldspar and 16% lithic fragments. The actual mineral composition of the sandstone is shown in Table 4.7 and the kinetic parameters used in the simulation are shown later in Table 4.10.

Table 4.7 List of i	initial mineral	volume	fractions	and	potential	secondary	mineral	phases	for
Gulf Coast sedimen	nts.								

Mineral	Chemical composition	Volume (%)		
Primary mineral				
quartz	SiO <sub>2</sub>	49.7466		
kaolinite	$Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4$	1.8135		
calcite	CaCO <sub>3</sub>	1.7361		
illite	$K_{0.6}Mg_{0.25}Al_{1.8}(Al_{0.5}Si_{3.5}O_{10})(OH)_2$	0.8586		
kerogen-O	CH <sub>2</sub> O	2.6136		
oligoclase	$CaNa_4Al_6Si_{14}O_{40}$	17.8155		
K-feldspar	KAlSi <sub>3</sub> O <sub>8</sub>	7.3611		
Na-smectite	$Ca_{0.145}Mg_{0.26}Al_{1.77}Si_{3.97}O_{10}(OH)_2$	3.5073		
clinochlore-14A	$Mg_5Al_2Si_3O_{10}(OH)_8$	2.6793		
daphnite-14A	$Fe_5Al_2Si_3O_{10}(OH)_8$	1.4211		
hematite	Fe <sub>3</sub> O <sub>3</sub>	0.4473		
porosity	-	10		
total	-	100		
Secondary mineral				
albite-low	NaAlSi <sub>3</sub> O <sub>8</sub>			
dolomite	$CaMg_{0.3}Fe_{0.7}(CO_3)_2$			
siderite	FeCO <sub>3</sub>			
Ca-smectite	$Na_{0.290}Mg_{0.26}Al_{1.77}Si_{3.97}O_{10}(OH)_2$			
pyrite	FeS <sub>2</sub>			
ankerite	$CaMg(CO_3)_2$			
dawsonite	NaAlCO <sub>3</sub> (OH) <sub>2</sub>			

Xu *et al.* (2010) incorporated a simple kinetic model into the reactive transport modeling for geologic storage of  $CO_2$  in saline aquifers, the Frio-I Brine Pilot. The Frio site is located on the flank of a salt dome within the South Liberty oil field, near Dayton, Texas, a region of the Gulf Coast where industrial sources of  $CO_2$  are abundant. The Frio Formation is composed of several reworked fluvial sandstone and siltstone beds that are separated by transgressive marine shale. The Frio "C" zone is a subarkosic fine-grained, moderately sorted quartz and feldspar sandstone, with minor amounts of illite or smectite and calcite. The fluid at the "C" zone has a pressure of about 152 bar and a temperature of about 59 °C. The initial rock mineral composition used in the modeling is presented in Table 4.8, which may be broadly representative of US Gulf Coast sandstone formations.

Initial total dissolved component concentrations are in Table 4.9 and the kinetic parameters used in the simulation are shown later in Table 4.10.  $O_2$  (aq) concentration is obtained by equilibrium with initial mineral composition. Iron is the sum of Fe<sup>2+</sup> and Fe<sup>3+</sup> and their related complexes

(mainly  $Fe^{2^+}$ ). Carbon is the sum of  $CO_2$  (aq),  $CH_4$  (aq), and their related species such as  $HCO_3^-$  and acetic acid (aq). Sulfur is the sum of sulfate and sulfide species.

Mineral	Volume fraction (%)
Primary Minerals	
Quartz	49.75
Kaolinite	1.81
Calcite	1.74
Illite	0.86
Oligoclase	17.82
K-feldspar	7.36
Na-smectite	3.51
Chlorite	4.1
Hematite	0.45
Secondary Mineral	ls
Magnesite	
Dolomite	
Low-albite	
Siderite	
Ankerite	
Dawsonite	
Ca-smectite	
Pyrite	

Table 4.8. Primary and secondary rock mineral composition used in the modeling.

Table 4.9 Initial total dissolved component concentrations derived from baseline fluid samples.

Parameter	Value	Elements	Concentration (mol/kg)
Temperature(°C)	59	Na <sup>+</sup>	1.35
pH	6.7	$\mathbf{K}^+$	4.53×10 <sup>-3</sup>
Permeability(m <sup>2</sup> )	$2.3 \times 10^{-12}$	Ca <sup>2+</sup>	6.6×10 <sup>-2</sup>
		$Mg^{2+}$	2.2×10 <sup>-2</sup>
		Carbon	5.04×10 <sup>-2</sup>
		Cl	1.49
		Sulfur	4.20×10 <sup>-5</sup>
		SiO <sub>2</sub> (aq)	$2.50 \times 10^{-4}$
		Al <sup>3+</sup>	1.56×10 <sup>-8</sup>
		Iron	4.63×10 <sup>-4</sup>
		O <sub>2</sub> (aq)	4.88×10 <sup>-68</sup>

The kinetic rate constants used in the reactive transport modeling carried out by Xu *et al.* (2004b, 2010) are summarized in Table 4.10.

		Parameters for ki	netic rate law						
Mineral A (cm2/g)		Neutral mechanism		Acid mechanism			Base mechanism		
		$K_{25}$ (mol/m <sup>2</sup> s)	Ea(kJ/mol)	K <sub>25</sub>	Ea	$n(H^+)$	K <sub>25</sub>	Ea	$n(H^+)$
Quartz	9.8	$1.023 \times 10^{-14}$	87.7	-	-	-	-	-	
Kaolinite	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472
Calcite	9.8	1.549×10 <sup>-6</sup>	23.5	5.012×10 <sup>-1</sup>	14.4	1	-	-	-
Illite	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Oligoclase	9.8	$1.445 \times 10^{-12}$	69.8	2.138×10 <sup>-10</sup>	65	0.457	-	-	-
K-feldspar	9.8	2.890×10 <sup>-13</sup>	38	8.710×10 <sup>-11</sup>	51.7	0.5	6.310×10 <sup>-12</sup>	94.1	-0.823
Na-smectite	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Chlorite	9.8	2.020×10 <sup>-13</sup>	88	7.762×10 <sup>-12</sup>	88	0.5	-	-	-
Hematite	12.9	2.512×10 <sup>-15</sup>	66.2	$4.074 \times 10^{-10}$	66.2	1	-	-	-
Magnesite	9.8	4.571×10 <sup>-10</sup>	22.5	4.169×10 <sup>-7</sup>	14.4	1	-	-	-
Dolomite	9.8	2.951×10 <sup>-8</sup>	52.2	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5	-	-	-
Low-albite	9.8	$2.754 \times 10^{-13}$	69.8	6.918×10 <sup>-11</sup>	65	0.457	$2.512 \times 10^{-16}$	71	-0.572
Siderite	9.8	$1.260 \times 10^{-9}$	62.76	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5	-	-	-
Ankerite	9.8	1.260×10 <sup>-9</sup>	62.76	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5	-	-	-
Dawsonite	9.8	$1.260 \times 10^{-9}$	62.76	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5	-	-	-
Ca-smectite	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Glauconite	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Kerogen-O	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472
Forsterite	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472
Fayalite	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472
Goethite	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Clinochlore-14A	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Daphnite-14A	151.6	$1.660 \times 10^{-13}$	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
		$K_{25}=2.818\times 10^{-5}$		$K_{25}=2.02\times10^{-5}$					
Durito	12.9	Ea=56.9		Ea=56.9					
I YINC		n(O2(aq))=0.5		$n(H^+)=0.5, n(Fe)$	<sup>3+</sup> )=0.5				

Table 4.10. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation.

Zerai *et al.* (2006) conducted the kinetic modeling of the Rose Run Sandstone using The Geochemist's Workbench. The Cambrian Rose Run Sandstone is a deep saline aquifer and oilgas producing unit that extends beneath eastern Ohio, Pennsylvania, New York, and Kentucky in the Appalachian Basin of Eastern United States. It is also the only one of the Cambrian sandstones that is known to retain its sandstone composition in the eastern part of the state rather than passing laterally into carbonate, and it lies at depths suitable for injection of supercritical  $CO_2$  and sealed by impermeable cap rock of the Trenton Limestone and Cincinnati Shale. The Rose Run Sandstone consists of alternating layers of sandstone and carbonate. The sandstone commonly has dolomite cement and glauconite. The total thickness of these capping formations ranges from 100 to 500 m. Like many deep aquifers of the eastern United States and Canada the Rose Run Sandstone consists of locally glauconitic, feldspathic quartz sandstone interbedded with dolostone and is heterogeneous at multiple scales. The typical range of porosity and permeability of the silicate rock assemblage in the Rose Run Sandstone are 7-15% and 1-15 md,
respectively. The mineral composition of Rose Run Sandstone, initial concentration of aqueous species in formation water and kinetic parameters is given in Tables 4.11-4.13.

Carbonate	Mass fraction (%)	Sandstone	Mass fraction (%)	Mixed	Mass fraction (%)
Primary mineral	•		•		•
Dolomite	60	Quartz	83	Quartz	70
Calcite	39	K-feldspar	10	Dolomite	13.8
Siderite	1	Kaolinite	3	Calcite	8
		Albite	2	K-feldspar	5
		Annite	1	Annite	1
		Siderite	1	Albite	1
				Kaolinite	1
				Siderite	0.2
Secondary miner	al		•		•
Dawsonite					
Muscovite					
Strontianite					

Table 4.11. The mineral assemblages of the Rose Run Formation.

Table 4.12. Rate constants for the minerals used in the reactive transport simulations.

Mineral	Rate constants logK (25°C)(mol/m <sup>2</sup> s)	Ea (kJ/mol)	Surface area(cm <sup>2</sup> /g)
Albite	-11	68	10
Annite	-10.5	45	10
Calcite	-5.8	63	10
Dawsonite	-8.4	64	10
Dolomite	-6.7	55	10
Kaolinite	-11.4	64	10
K-feldspar	-10.9	58	10
Muscovite	-11.7	64	10
Siderite	-6.7	62.8	10
Strontianite	-7.35	41.9	10
Quartz	-12	87.5	10

Table 4.13. Initial Brine composition of Rose Run Sandstone.

Parameter	Value	Elements	Concentration (mg/kg)
Temperature(°C)	54	Na <sup>+</sup>	60122
pН	6.4	$K^+$	3354
		Ca <sup>2+</sup>	37600
		$Mg^{2+}$	5880.6
		HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	122
		Cl	191203
		$SO_4^{2-}$	326.4
		SiO <sub>2</sub> (aq)	3
		$Al^{3+}$	2.16
		Fe <sup>2+</sup>	140
		$\mathrm{Sr}^{2+}$	455.52

Ketzer *et al.* (2009) studied the mineralogical integrity of sandstone reservoirs of the Rio Bonito Formation, Parará Basin, and southern Brazil. The Rio Bonito Formation consists of paralic fine- to coarse-grained sandstones, and mudstones and coal, deposited during the early Permian in Paraná Basin. The sandstones of the Rio Bonito Formation are subarkose to quartzarenites in composition. The main detrital constituents are monocrystalline quartz grains (average 52 vol. %), and K-feldspars (average 4.5 vol. %). Other detrital constituents that average <1 vol. % each include plagioclase grains, volcanic rock fragments, sedimentary rock fragments, metamorphic rock fragments (quartzite, schist and gneiss), biotite, muscovite, heavy minerals (tourmaline, epidote, zircon and garnet), opaque minerals, and glaucony. Three representative samples of the aquifers of the Rio Bonito formation were selected from cores available near the Candiota coal mining area for equilibrium modeling and kinetic modeling of batch reaction. Table 4.14 and Table 4.15 show the main mineralogical composition and porosity of the samples selected for the geochemical reaction modeling and kinetic parameters used in calculations and simulation.

Table 4.14. Mineral compositions of the three samples from sandstone reservoirs of the Rio Bonito Formation.

Sample 1	Volume (%)	Sample 2	Volume (%)	Sample 3	Volume (%)
Quartz	67.66	Quartz	66.66	Quartz	67
Kaolinite	6.66	Calcite	13.66	Kaolinite	6.66
Calcite	4.66	K-feldspars	5	Dolomite	5.33
K-feldspars	4	Pyrite	1.33	K-feldspars	4.66
Albite	1.33	Plagioclase	0.33	Albite	1.33
other	0.66	other	1.33	Pyrite	0.33
Porosity	15	Porosity	11.66	Porosity	14.66

Table 4.15.	The kin	etic para	meters u	ised in	the mod	leling.
						<u> </u>

Mineral	logk (25°C)	logk (200°C)	Ea(kJ/mol)	n	Surface area(m <sup>2</sup> /g)
Quartz	-13.4	-7.51	90.9	0	0.01133
K-feldspar	-10.06	-6.71	51.7	0.5	0.01173
Kaolinite	-12.71	-9.6	48	0.22	0.01156
Calcite	-0.3	0.63	14.4	1	0.01107
Dolomite	-3.19	-0.85	36.1	0.5	0.01056
Albite	-10.16	-5.95	65	0.457	0.01145
Anorthite	-3.5	-2.42	16.6	1.411	0.01099
Pyrite	-7.52	-3.83	56.9	-0.500(O2(aq))	0.00599

**Clay Formation:** Gaus *et al.* (2005) and Audigane *et al.* (2006, 2007) performed reactive transport modeling of dissolved  $CO_2$  in the cap rock at Sleipner. The Sleipner area is located in the Norwegian part of the North Sea.  $CO_2$  is injected into the Mio-Pliocene Utsira Sand, a highly elongated sand reservoir with an area of some 26100 km<sup>2</sup> and a depth between 700 and 1000 m. The Utsira Sand is overlain by the sediments of the Nordland Group, which are mainly shales and have a thickness of approximately 250 m. These sediments are presumed to provide a seal

for the Utsira Sands and to inhibit vertical CO<sub>2</sub> migration, with capillary leakage of CO<sub>2</sub> unlikely to occur.

The lower part of the Nordland Shale extends well beyond the area currently occupied by the  $CO_2$  injected at Sleipner. Cutting samples are comprised dominantly by grey clay silts or silty clays. Most are massive although some show a weak sedimentary fabric. XRD analysis typically reveals quartz, undifferentiated mica, kaolinite, K-feldspar, calcite, smectite, albite, chlorite, pyrite and gypsum together with traces of drilling mud contamination. The clay particle-size fraction is generally dominated by illite with minor kaolinite and traces of chlorite and smectite. The mineralogy of the Nordland shale cap rock used for the modeling is based on the composition of a selection of cutting samples in Table 4.16. The composition of the formation water in the cap rock is in Table 4.17, the molar volumes, specific surface areas and kinetic rate parameters used in the three simulation cases by Gaus *et al.* (2005) is in Table 4.18.

Original composition	Mass percent	Minerals in simulation
Plagioclase	12.3	Albite Anorthite Oligoclase
Calcite	1	Calcite
Quartz	21.5	Chalcedony
Chlorite	4.1	Clinochlore-7A
Mica/Illite	24.7	Illite
Kaolinite	18	Kaolinite
K-feldspar	2.1	K-feldspar
Pyrite	2.8	Pyrite
Siderite	1.6	Siderite
Smectite	8.8	Smectite
Mixed layer clay	1.4	Not used
Total	98.3	

Table 4.16. Mineralogical composition of the Nordland Shale and the amounts introduced in the model.

Table 4.17. Initial composition of the formation water in the cap rock.

Parameter	Value	Elements	Concentration (M)
Temperature(°C)	37	Al	3.51×10 <sup>-8</sup>
Ionic strength	0.647	Ba	$1.25 \times 10^{-5}$
pH	7.67	C	6.92×10 <sup>-5</sup>
pe	-4.07	Ca	$1.77 \times 10^{-1}$
		Cl	4.79×10 <sup>-1</sup>
		Fe	2.48×10 <sup>-7</sup>
		K	$1.42 \times 10^{-4}$
		Mg	1.11×10 <sup>-2</sup>
		Na	1.06×10 <sup>-1</sup>
		S	4.81×10 <sup>-4</sup>
		Si	2.52×10 <sup>-4</sup>

Mineral	Mass percent	Amount present (mol per REV)	Molar volume (10 <sup>-6</sup> m <sup>3</sup> /mol)	Specific surface area (m <sup>2</sup> /g)	Rate constant (log $k_{37}$ ) (mol/m <sup>2</sup> s)
Primary mineral					
Albite	12.4 <sup>a</sup> /6.2 <sup>b</sup>	25.6 <sup>a</sup> /12.8 <sup>b</sup>	100.25	0.0695	-8.44
Anorthite	$0^{a}/6.2^{b}$	0 <sup>a</sup> /12.8 <sup>a</sup>	100.75	0.0659	-4.93
Oligoclase	12.4°	25.6c	100.35	0.0695	-7.94
Calcite	1	5.6	36.93	0.0671	-6.35
Quartz	21.5	196	22.69	0.0686	-11.73
Clinochlore-7A	4.1	4	20.98	0.113	-11.63
Illite	24.7	35.21	59.89	0.468	-13.08
Kaolinite	18	38.15	99.52	1.16	-12.54
K-feldspar	2.1	4.08	108.87	0.0711	-8.79
Pyrite	2.8	12.9	23.94	0.0363	-3.72
Siderite	1.6	8.6	29.37	0.0461	-7.38
Smectite-Chigh-Fe-Mg	8.8	11.93	140.71	1.04	-13.25
Secondary mineral					
Dawsonite	0	0	59.3	0.0849	-6.86
Dolomite-dis	0	0	64.39	0.0635	-7.38
Magnesite	0	0	28.02	0.0604	-7.38

Table 4.18. Molar volumes, specific surface areas and kinetic rate parameters at 37  $^{\circ}$ C of the minerals.

a Plagioclase composition for Case 1

b Plagioclase composition for Case 2

c Plagioclase composition for Case 3

**Carbonate Formation:** André *et al.* (2007) investigated the reservoir behavior subjected to hydraulic and chemical perturbations by  $CO_2$  injection in the Dogger aquifer. The mineralogical characteristics of Dogger oolitic limestone present some analogies with Lavoux limestone encountered in many quarries of Paris Basin. Oolitic and bioclastic limestone constitute the most permeable part of the Dogger aquifer, which dates from the Jurassic (Bajocian and Bathonian). The mean porosity is 0.12 and the permeability is assumed to be spatially homogeneous at  $10^{-13}$  m<sup>2</sup>. Initial temperature and pressure are 75 °C and 180 bars, respectively. Geochemical reaction modeling is carried out for a carbonate reservoir represented by a cylindrical geometry centered on a vertical injection well with two injection scenarios (CO<sub>2</sub> saturated water and pure supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> injection). The mineral composition of Dogger reservoir, initial concentration of aqueous species in formation water and kinetic parameters is given in Tables 4.19-4.21.

Table 4.19. Dogger aquifer mineralogy and list of potential secondary minerals present in the

IESEIVOII.			
Mineral composition	Volume fraction (%)		
Primary Mineral			
Calcite	70		
Disordered dolomite	10		
Siderite	5		

Illite	5
Albite	5
K-Feldspar	5
Secondary Mineral	
Kaolinite	
Chalcedony	
Magnesite	
Dawsonite	
Anhydrite	
Halite	

Table 4.20. Chemical composition of water from the Dogger aquifer in the region of Fontainebleau.

Parameter	Value	Elements	Concentration (ppm)
Temperature(°C)	75	Na	1794
pН	6.7	K	35.2
Alkalinity	427	Ca	148
		Mg	55.9
		Al	0.002
		Fe	1
		Cl	2485
		$SO_4$	633.6
		SiO <sub>2</sub>	41.4
		HS	11.9

Table 4.21. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation.

Mineral	Arid mechanism		l	Neutral me	echanism	Carbona	Carbonation mechanism		
	Logk	Ea	n	Logk	Ea	Logk	Ea	m	
Calcite	-0.3	14.4	1	-5.81	23.5	-3.48	35.4	1	
Dawsonite	-	-	-	-7	62.8	-	-	-	
Dolomite	-3.19	36.1	0.5	-7.53	52.2	-5.11	34.8	0.5	
Magnesite	-6.38	14.4	1	-9.34	23.5	-5.22	562.8	1	
Siderite	-3.19	36.1	0.5	-7.53	52.2	-5.11	34.8	0.5	
						Alkaline 1	nechanism		
						Logk	Ea	n	
Illite	-10.98	23.6	0.34	-12.78	35	-16.52	58.9	-0.4	
K-Feldspar	-10.06	51.7	0.5	-12.4	38	-21.2	94.1	-0.823	
Albite	-10.16	65	0.457	-12.56	69.8	-15.6	71	-0.572	
Kaolinite	-11.31	65.9	0.777	-13.18	22.2	-17.05	17.9	-0.472	
Chalcedony	-	-	-	-13.99	87.7	-	-	-	
Anhydrite	-	-	-	-3.19	14.3	-	-	-	
Halite	-	-	-	-0.21	7.4	-	-	-	

Cantucci *et al.* (2009) proposed a geochemical model for the hosting aquifers of the Weyburn Oil Field (Canada), where anthropogenic  $CO_2$  is injected since 2000, to reconstruct reservoir chemical composition of the two reservoirs (Marly and Vuggy) where  $CO_2$  is stored by using the existing geochemical data and assess the (kinetic) evolution of the system during the  $CO_2$  injection. The Weyburn Oil Field is located in the Prairie Province of Saskatchewan (Western

Canada) in the Midale Beds of the Mississippian Charles Formation. The latter is at the depth of 1300-1500 m and is divided in the Frobisher Evaporite and the Midale Carbonate. Shallow marine carbonate-evaporitic rocks form the Midale Carbonate where two aquifers, the dolomitic "Marly" and the underlying calcitic "Vuggy", sealed by an anhydrite cap-rock, are hosted. Pressure and temperature of the reservoirs are 15 MPa and 62 °C, respectively.

The mineralogical composition of the Marly and Vuggy reservoirs used in the geochemical simulation is calculated according to that obtained from 18 core boxes collected from 4 wells located into the injection area. The Marly reservoir (from 1 to 11m thick) is a chalky, microcrystalline dolomite layer with dominantly intercrystalline porosity (26%). The Vuggy reservoir (10 to 22m thick) mainly consists of grainstone and packestone with moldic, intergranular and intercrystalline porosity (14%). The mineralogical compositions of these two reservoirs are given in Table 4.22 and the kinetic parameters used in the geochemical reaction modeling are given in Table 4.23.

Marly reservoir Volume fraction		Vuggy reservoir	Volume fraction		
Dolomite	0.8	Calcite	0.935		
Calcite	0.145	Dolomite	0.03		
Gypsum	0.03	Anhydrite	0.02		
K-Feldspar	0.005	Authigenic silica	0.005		
Authigenic silica	0.005	Pyrite	0.005		
Pyrite	0.005	K-feldspar	0.005		
Clay	0.0025	Porosity	0.14		
Porosity	0.26				

Table 4.22. Mineralogical composition of the Marly and Vuggy reservoirs.

Table 4.23. Kinetic parameters	s for mineral	dissolution and	precipitation.
--------------------------------	---------------	-----------------	----------------

Minaral	Acid mechanism			Neutral mechanism		Base mechanism			Specific surface area		
Mineral	Logk <sub>25</sub>	Ea	n	Logk25	Ea	Logk25	Ea	n	Marly	Vuggy	
Primary mir	Primary mineral										
K-Feldspar	-12.5	-	0.5	-15.3	-	-14.2	94.1	0.823	0.175	0.175	
Calcite	-0.3	14.4	1	-5.81	23.5	-3.48a	35.4a	1.000 <sup>a</sup>	0.034	0.015	
Dolomite	-3.19	36.1	0.5	-7.53	52.2	-5.11a	34.8a	$0.500^{a}$	0.105	0.014	
Kaolinite	-11.31	65.9	0.777	-13.18	22.2	-17.05	17.9	0.472	2.317	0.015	
Chalcedony	-	-	-	-12.23	74.5	-	-	-	0.038	0.015	
Pyrite	-7.52	56.9	-0.50 <sup>b</sup>	-4.55	56.9	-	-	0.50°	0.012	0.008	
Secondary r	nineral										
Gypsum	-	-	-	-2.79	14.3	-	-	-	0.003	0.003	
Anhydrite	-	-	-	-3.19	14.3	-	-	-	0.1	0.1	
Dawsonite	-	-	-	-7	62.8	-	-	-	0.14	0.14	
Magnesite	-6.38	14.4	1	-9.34	23.5	-5.22	62.8	$1.000^{a}$	0.1	0.1	
Muscovite	-11.85	22	0.37	-13.55	22	-14.55	22	0.22	0.106	0.106	
Albite	-9.87	65	0.457	-12.04	69.8	-16.98	71	0.572	0.115	0.115	
Chlorite	-11.11	88	0.5	-12.52	88	-	-	-	0.113	0.113	

a Reaction order with respect to  $p(CO_2)$ .

b Reaction order with respect to  $H^+$  and  $Fe^{3+}$ .

c Reaction order with respect to  $O_2$ .

**Dunite Formation:** Xu *et al.* (2004a) also conducted the geochemical reaction simulation for dunite subjected to  $CO_2$  injection. The dunite rock is a monomineralic rock consisting essentially of olivine. This rock is a mantle residue after depletion of basaltic magma, and occurs rarely at the earth's surface. However, it has a very large  $CO_2$  sequestration capacity we can observe from Table 4.5, and was chosen to be illustrative of the extreme limits possible for  $CO_2$  sequestration by mineral trapping. Olivine is a binary solid solution of the pure end-member minerals, forsterite (Mg<sub>2</sub>SiO<sub>4</sub>) and fayalite (Fe<sub>2</sub>SiO<sub>4</sub>). The volume ratio of these end member components in typical olivine is about 9:1. The initial mineral abundances used in the simulations are presented in Table 4.24. The porosity of dunite is commonly small, and an initial porosity of 0.05 was assumed. The possible secondary mineral phases under  $CO_2$  injection are also listed in Table 4.24 and the kinetic parameters used in the simulation are given in Table 4.10.

Mineral	Chemical composition	Volume fraction (%)
Primary mineral		
forsterite	Mg <sub>2</sub> SiO <sub>4</sub>	85.5
fayalite	Fe <sub>2</sub> SiO <sub>4</sub>	9.5
porosity	-	5
total	-	100
Secondary mineral	•	•
magnetite	Fe <sub>3</sub> O <sub>4</sub>	0
magnesite	MgCO <sub>3</sub>	0
siderite	FeCO <sub>3</sub>	0
talc	$Mg_3Si_4O_{10}(OH)_2$	0
amorphous silica	SiO <sub>2</sub>	0
iron	Fe	0

Table 4.24. List of initial mineral volume fractions and possible secondary mineral phases.

### **Reactive Transport Modeling of Calcite Dissolution**

The dissolution of  $CO_2$  into groundwater increases the acidity of water and changes the chemical equilibriums between formation water and aquifer rock. Numerical modeling of multiphase flow and reactive transport provides a powerful tool for understanding and predicting the flow and chemical evolution of the subsurface environment. However, in real systems a large number of chemical reactions are present simultaneously, making the reactive transport model inherently complex and computationally intensive. It is desirable to have a numerical model that uses simplified sets of geochemical reactions yet is able to capture the essential physics (dissolution and precipitation) of the system.

The geochemical reactions between  $CO_2$  and different kinds of minerals in the formation are modeled using the non-isothermal multiphase reactive transport program TOUGHREACT (Xu *et al.*, 2006), which is developed by introducing reactive transport into the existing multi-phase fluid and heat flow simulator TOUGH2.

A simple reactive transport model is first developed to simulate fluid flow, solute transport and chemical reaction of injected CO<sub>2</sub>, brine and minerals. Among many mineral compositions in the

subsurface formation, calcite (CaCO<sub>3</sub>) reacts with CO<sub>2</sub> very quickly after CO<sub>2</sub> injection into the formation. Thus, we began building the model using calcite as the only mineral reacting with CO<sub>2</sub>. The complexity of the model will be gradually increased with more reactions and species included later.

After  $CO_2$  injection into the subsurface formation, it is dissolved in the surrounding formation water, forming H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, HCO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup> and CO<sub>3</sub><sup>2-</sup> and increasing the acidity:

$$\operatorname{CO}_2(\operatorname{gas}) \Leftrightarrow \operatorname{CO}_2(\operatorname{aq})$$
 (4.1)

$$\operatorname{CO}_{2}(\operatorname{aq}) + \operatorname{H}_{2}\operatorname{O} \Leftrightarrow \operatorname{H}_{2}\operatorname{CO}_{3}$$

$$(4.2)$$

$$H_2CO_3 \Leftrightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$$
 (4.3)

$$HCO_3^- \Leftrightarrow H^+ + CO_3^{2-} \tag{4.4}$$

Then, the increased acidity results in the dissolution of many of the primary host rock minerals. The mineral dissolution increases concentrations of cations  $Ca^{2+}$ , which in turn causes complexing of dissolved cations with the bicarbonate ion to form  $Ca(HCO_3)_2$ :

$$CaCO_{3}+CO_{2}(gas)+H_{2}O \Leftrightarrow Ca^{2+}+2HCO_{3}^{-}$$
(4.5)

A simplified 1-D radial reactive transport model is shown in Figure 4.1. The geologic formation is assumed to be infinitely long and homogeneous with a thickness of 100 m, containing 1 M NaCl brine at a constant temperature of  $75^{\circ}$ C. The well field is modeled as a circular region of 10,000 m radius, at the center of which CO<sub>2</sub> is injected uniformly at a constant rate of 90 kg/s. A 1-D radial grid was used with a spacing gradually increasing away from the well. The CO<sub>2</sub> injection was assumed to continue for a period of 40 years. Prior to CO<sub>2</sub> injection, batch geochemical modeling for water-calcite interaction was performed to obtain a nearly equilibrated water chemistry using 1 M NaCl brine at a temperature of  $75^{\circ}$ C. The resulting water chemistry was used as the initial condition of reactive geochemical transport simulations. The hydraulic parameter and the initial concentration of aqueous species are given in Table 4.25.

Table 4.25. Hydrogeologic and geochemical parameters for the 1-D radial fluid flow problem.

Parameter	Value
Aquifer thickness	100 m
Permeability	$10^{-13} \text{ m}^2$
Porosity	0.3
Compressibility	$4.5 \times 10^{-10}  \mathrm{Pa}^{-1}$
Temperature	75 °C
Pressure	200 bar
CO <sub>2</sub> injection rate	90 kg/s
Volume fraction of calcite	0.12
Volume fraction of non-reactive mineral	0.88
Wellbore radius	0.3 m

Concentration of Ca <sup>2+</sup>	0.01 mol/kg
Concentration of $HCO_3^-$	8.8×10 <sup>-4</sup> mol/kg
Concentration of $Na^+$	0.99 mol/kg
Concentration of Cl <sup>-</sup>	1.0 mol/kg
рН	7.16



Figure 4.1 Simplified conceptual model for the CO<sub>2</sub> injection problem.

### **Results and discussion**

The initial pH value is 7.16 in the assuming calcite formation. With the imposition of highpressure CO<sub>2</sub>, the pH of the system is lowered to 4.6 (Figure 4.2a). The abundance of hydrogen ion ( $H^+$ ) in formation water results in the dissolution of calcite (Figure 4.2b). The porosity increases as a result of the dissolution of calcite, as shown in Figure 4.3.



### pH Change by Calcite Dissolution





Calcite Dissolution

Figure 4.2b. Calcite change in abundance at different times for 1-D radial CO<sub>2</sub> injection problem (negative values indicate dissolution).



### **Porosity Change by Calcite Dissolution**

Figure 4.3: Porosity change at different times for 1-D radial CO<sub>2</sub> injection problem.

Significant dissolution of calcite occurs in the model system due to the lower pH induced by the dissolution of  $CO_2$  at high pressure. Figures 4.4 and 4.5 show the concentrations of calcium ion and bicarbonate radical during a 40-year  $CO_2$  injection period. The concentrations of calcium ion and bicarbonate radical increase with increasing gaseous  $CO_2$  due to the continuous reaction between  $CO_2$  and calcite mineral.



Figure 4.4: Calcium ion concentrations at different times for 1-D radial CO<sub>2</sub> injection problem.



### **Bicarbonate Radical Concentration**

Figure 4.5: Bicarbonate radical concentrations at different times for 1-D CO<sub>2</sub> injection problem.

# Assessment of porosity and permeability changes associated with dissolution/precipitation

### **Background of Geochemical Reaction Modeling Study**

There are many power plants located in the Colorado Plateau and southern Rocky Mountains region of the U.S. Over 100 million tonnes of  $CO_2$  are released to the atmosphere each year from those power plants. This region contains broad anticlinal structures, not generally thought of as gas traps, that may be suitable for permanent sequestration of  $CO_2$ . Field studies of geochemical reaction modeling discussed in this section were conducted at the White Rim formation lying approximately Northwest-Southeast and in the vicinity of the Hunter power plant on the Colorado Plateau of Central Utah.

## Geochemical Reaction Modeling Study for White Rim formation, Colorado Plateau, Central Utah

**Geological Structure Beneath Hunter Power Plant:** The geological characteristics beneath the power plant are given in Figure 4.6. The site is considered an important potential sequestration site in Colorado Plateau, as there are two power plants within 10 km with a combined capacity of 2000 MW producing 15 million tonnes of  $CO_2$  emissions per year. The sedimentary sequence shown in Figure 4.6 contains potential reservoir and seal formations at over 1 km depth beneath the power plant.

Among the formations beneath Hunter Power Plant are four that have characteristics suitable for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration (White et al., 2005): (1) Jurassic Navajo Sandstone is a classic example of an eolian deposit with excellent porosity and permeability because it contains large-scale crossbeds, frosted quartz grains, and other sedimentary diagnostic eolian features. (2) Jurassic Wingate Sandstone is in the uplift and is relatively homogeneous. It was also deposited in an eolian environment and although little petrophysical work is available, it likely has good porosity and permeability. (3) Permian White Rim Sandstone with excellent porosity and permeability contains cross-beds in clean, fine-grained sandstone. The eolian White Rim is the best candidate for CO<sub>2</sub> injection. It is the main CO<sub>2</sub> reservoir at Gordon Creek field. (4) Mississippian Redwall Limestone, which was deposited in a shallow marine environment. The Redwall is the deepest candidate for CO<sub>2</sub> injection, has moderate porosity and permeability, and is a major producer of oil and gas in structural traps (faulted anticlines) to the southeast in the Paradox Basin. Also, there are some potential shale seals (Cretaceous Mancos Shale, Triassic Chinle Shale, Triassic Moenkopi Formation, Permian Black Box Dolomite, Devonian Elbert Formation and Cambrian Ophir Formation) and potential evaporite seals (Jurassic Carmel Formation and Pennsylvanian Honaker Trail/Paradox Formations) overlying or underlying the potential CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration formation.

White *et al.* (2005) simulated  $CO_2$  injection into the entire potential sequestration site using two models. The first one was a hydrological model that simulated the injection of  $CO_2$  into Navajo Sandstone, White Rim Sandstone, Wingate Sandstone, and Redwall Limestone aquifers, and tracked the location of the  $CO_2$  over a period of 1000 years. Chemical reactions between the

reservoir brine and the host rock were ignored. Of the investigated potential sequestration reservoirs above mentioned, only the White Rim sandstone formation could provide containment of injected  $CO_2$  for the hundreds to thousands of years required for mineral sequestration reactions. Therefore, in this quarter we studied the effects of water-rock interactions on  $CO_2$  sequestration according to the mineral compositions of White Rim sandstone formation.



Figure 4.6. Geological condition on the cross-section beneath the Hunter Power Plant, Central Utah. (White *et al.*, 2005).

**Reactive Transport Model Setup:** In our study, we employ the original mineral compositions of the White Rim sandstone formation to establish a 2D reactive transport model to investigate the effect of mineral dissolution/precipitation on porosity and permeability of the formation. The mineral composition of White Rim sandstone formation was taken from the previous geochemical reaction model (White *et al.*, 2005). The initial mineral volume fractions of White Rim sandstone formation and potential secondary mineral phases are given in Table 4.26.

Mineral	Chemical composition	Volume (%)						
Primary minerals								
Quartz	SiO <sub>2</sub>	77.0						
Kaolinite	Al <sub>2</sub> Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> (OH) <sub>4</sub>	2.25						
Calcite	CaCO <sub>3</sub>	1.80						
K-feldspar	KAlSi <sub>3</sub> O <sub>8</sub>	0.60						
Na-smectite	$Ca_{0.145}Mg_{0.26}Al_{1.77}Si_{3.97}O_{10}(OH)_2$	2.15						
Albite-low	NaAlSi <sub>3</sub> O <sub>8</sub>	0.60						
Anorthite	CaAl <sub>2</sub> Si <sub>2</sub> O <sub>8</sub>	0.66						
Porosity	-	15						
Secondary n	ninerals							
Illite	$K_{0.6}Mg_{0.25}Al_{1.8}(Al_{0.5}Si_{3.5}O_{10})(OH)_2$							
Dolomite	CaMg <sub>0.3</sub> Fe <sub>0.7</sub> (CO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub>							
Dawsonite	NaAlCO <sub>3</sub> (OH) <sub>2</sub>							

Table 4.26. Initial mineral volume fractions and potential secondary mineral phases.

In previous simulations of CO<sub>2</sub> injection into the Farnham Dome reservoir on the Colorado Plateau (Allis *et al.*, 2001; White *et al.*, 2001, 2002), 100 md permeability was used for the saline aquifers. White *et al.* (2005) found that estimates of hydraulic conductivities from several hydrologic studies conducted on the Colorado Plateau by the United States Geological Survey were consistent with the value used in the Farnham Dome modeling. Furthermore, for their 2005 simulation work, the permeability was initially set to that value, so in our reactive transport model, the White Rim sandstone formation permeability is assumed to be 100 md. The capillary pressure function we used in the reactive transport simulations is from White *et al.* (2005). They parameterized the measured curves using five parameters, shown in Figure 4.7.



Figure 4.7. Definition of parameters used to define capillary pressure functions.  $P_0=3.92\times10^7$ ,  $P_1=1.10\times10^5$ ,  $P_2=3.90\times10^3$ ,  $S_1=0.05$  and  $S_1=1.00$ . (White *et al.*, 2005).

Initial equilibrium concentration of aquifer saline solution species is calculated using the mineralogy in Table 4.27, setting the reservoir fluid to a 0.03 M NaCl brine, and then allowing the brine to react with the reservoir for 1000 years. This equilibrium calculation model is a closed system comprised of a single element without any flow terms, a closed batch reaction system. Reservoir temperature is  $54^{\circ}$ C and initial pressure is 100 bars. Mineral dissolution and precipitation rates, and reactive surface area used in this work were taken from the geochemical reaction modeling conducted by Xu *et al.* (2010). The kinetic rate constants for mineral dissolution/precipitation used in the reactive transport modeling are summarized in Table 4.27. The initial brine composition in the White Rim sandstone obtained by the batch reaction modeling is given in Table 4.28.

			Parameters for kinetic rate law								
Mineral	A (cm2/g)	Neutral mechanism		Acid m	echanis	m	Base mechanism				
		$K_{25} (mol/m^{2} s)$	Ea(kJ/mol)	K <sub>25</sub>	Ea	$n(H^+)$	K <sub>25</sub>	Ea	n(H <sup>+</sup> )		
Quartz	9.8	1.023×10 <sup>-14</sup>	87.7	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Kaolinite	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472		
Calcite	9.8	1.549×10 <sup>-6</sup>	23.5	5.012×10 <sup>-1</sup>	14.4	1.000	-	-	-		
K-feldspar	9.8	$2.890 \times 10^{-13}$	38.0	8.710×10 <sup>-11</sup>	51.7	0.500	6.310×10 <sup>-12</sup>	94.1	-0.823		
Na-smectite	151.6	1.660×10 <sup>-13</sup>	35.0	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.340	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.400		
Albite-low	9.8	2.754×10 <sup>-13</sup>	69.8	6.918×10 <sup>-11</sup>	65.0	0.457	2.512×10 <sup>-16</sup>	71.0	-0.572		
Anorthite	9.8	$2.754 \times 10^{-13}$	69.8	6.918×10 <sup>-11</sup>	65.0	0.457	2.512×10 <sup>-16</sup>	71.0	-0.572		

Table 4.27. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation.

Illite	151.6	1.660×10 <sup>-13</sup>	35.0	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.340	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.400
Dolomite	9.8	2.951×10 <sup>-8</sup>	52.2	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.500	-	-	-
Dawsonite	9.8	1.260×10 <sup>-9</sup>	62.76	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.500	-	-	-

Table 4.28. Initial equilibrium concentration of water species (in mol/kg).

Parameter	Value	Elements	Concentration (mol/kg)
Temperature(°C)	54	$Na^+$	0.2972
pН	8.517	$\mathbf{K}^+$	$0.4002 \times 10^{-3}$
		Ca <sup>2+</sup>	$0.2154 \times 10^{-2}$
		$Mg^{2+}$	0.1487×10 <sup>-8</sup>
		HCO <sub>3</sub> -	0.1898×10 <sup>-2</sup>
		Cl-	0.3001
		SiO <sub>2</sub> (aq)	0.4233×10 <sup>-3</sup>
		AlO <sub>2</sub>	0.7058×10 <sup>-8</sup>

We used a two-dimensional radial model to assess the evolution of mineral composition, distribution of injected CO<sub>2</sub>, and subsequent geochemical changes in the White Rim sandstone reservoir. This 2D reactive transport model is a homogeneous sandstone formation 1000 m thick with a cylindrical geometrical configuration. In the vertical direction (z-direction), 20 layers are used with a constant spacing of 50 m. In the horizontal direction (x-direction), a radius of 5 km is modeled with grid block radial spacing that increases gradually away from the injection well. A total of 50 radial grid elements are used. The cross-section of this 2D radial model is shown in Figure 4.8. The outer grid element is specified to be an infinitive lateral boundary representing a constant boundary of the 2D model, which is representative of the constant hydrostatic pressure on the vertical geological boundary in White Rim Sandstone formation (White *et al.*, 2005). CO<sub>2</sub> injection was applied at the bottom portion of (the thickness of the injection portion is 50m) the well using a constant rate of 100 kg/s for a period of 30 years. This rate corresponds to about 5 million tonnes/year, approximately equal to the emissions from a 600 MW coal fired power station. Then, a fluid flow and geochemical transport simulation is run for a period of 1000 years.



Figure 4.8. 2D Mesh structure used for reactive transport modeling.

Simulation Results and Discussion: Figure 4.9 shows the spatial distribution of CO<sub>2</sub> gas saturation in the saline formation after 30 years CO<sub>2</sub> injection and 1000 years storage period. The CO<sub>2</sub> gas saturation in the saline aquifer rock increases with the injection of CO<sub>2</sub>, especially in the area around the injection well. A region 200 m in the vertical direction and 100 m radially are completely filled with CO<sub>2</sub> gas at 30 years of CO<sub>2</sub> injection. Due to its density, the injected supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> fluid at the bottom of the storage formation migrates upward rapidly, as shown in Figure 4.10. The  $CO_2$  gas plume rose to the top layer of the saline aquifer after 1000 years With the migration of  $CO_2$  gas during the storage period, dissolved  $CO_2$  rapidly storage. increases the concentration of bicarbonate radical to over 2 mol/kg H<sub>2</sub>O in the two-phase region (Figure 4.11). The injected  $CO_2$  dissolves in the surrounding formation water, forming  $H_2CO_3(aq)$ ,  $HCO_3^-$ , and  $CO_3^{2-}$ , and increasing acidity. The dissolution of  $CO_2$  in the saline aquifer results in the change of pH, decreasing to 4.5 in the two phase area, which is shown in Figure 4.11. The dissolved  $CO_2$  tends to migrate downward after 1000 years; that is not significant because precipitation of carbonate minerals partially consumes the dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>. Therefore the spatial distribution of pH after 1000 years tends not to be homogeneous in the two phase area.



Figure 4.9. Spatial distribution of CO<sub>2</sub> gas saturation after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years.



Figure 4.10. Spatial distribution of bicarbonate concentration (mol/kg formation water) due to the dissolution of  $CO_2$  gas after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years.



Figure 4.11. Spatial distribution of pH value due to the dissolution of  $CO_2$  gas or mineral composition after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years.

The dissolution/precipitation of minerals present in aquifer rock occurs from chemical reactions between the dissolved  $CO_2$  and the minerals. The increased concentration of H<sup>+</sup> in the aqueous phase caused by  $CO_2$  injection results in interactions with silicate minerals such as feldspars and clay minerals that release cations such as  $Ca^{2+}$  and  $Mg^{2+}$ . Figure 4.12 shows calcite volume fraction change due to the dissolution of calcite. The mineral dissolution increases concentrations of cations such as Na<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup>, which in turn causes complexing of dissolved cations with the bicarbonate ion to form NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, CaHCO<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup> and MgHCO<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup>. These tend to increase  $CO_2$  solubility and enhance solubility trapping during the long storage time. Therefore, the concentration of these cations increases during the storage period. Figure 4.13 shows the Mg<sup>2+</sup> concentration change during the 1000 years' storage period. It changes to 0.0018 mol/kg water in the two phase area.



Figure 4.12. Spatial distribution of calcite volume fraction change due to increasing acidity after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years (negative means dissolution).



Figure 4.13. Spatial distribution of  $Mg^{2+}$  concentration (mol/kg water) due to the dissolution of Na-smectite after 30 and 1000 years.

Porosity and permeability changes are caused by mineral dissolution and precipitation in the saline aquifer. This affects  $CO_2$  sequestration. Figures 4.14 and 4.15 show that porosity and permeability change after 1,000 years  $CO_2$  storage. Porosity and permeability tend to increase, which means dissolution of rock mineral in the saline aquifer dominates geochemical reactions after 30 years of  $CO_2$  injection. The simulation shows that after 100 years, only a small amount of illite and no dolomite and dawsonite have precipitated. In this case, we didn't observe

significant change of the host mineral volume fraction, porosity, and permeability. The reason might be that only 10% of the rock is reactive in the model. Moreover, the reactive rock mineral didn't react too much because of small reaction rate constants in the present geochemical reaction model. From the result of present modeling work, the main trapping mechanisms of  $CO_2$  injection in White Rim sandstone reservoir is solubility trapping. Mineral dissolution increased the solubility of  $CO_2$  - about 60%  $CO_2$  gas injected into the reservoir dissolved or reacted with the species from the dissolution of the host rock minerals.



Figure 4.14. Spatial distribution of porosity due to the CO<sub>2</sub> injection after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years.



Figure 4.15. Spatial distribution of permeability due to the CO<sub>2</sub> injection after 30, 50, 100 and 1000 years.

### Geochemical Reaction Modeling Study for Gulf Coast Sediments, U.S.

The geochemical reaction studies for Colorado Plateau and Southern Rocky Mountains indicate that the effect of  $CO_2$  sequestration on a deep saline aquifer will vary with the volume fraction of the reactive mineral phase. In the geochemical reaction study for the White Rim formation, because only ten percent of the mineral is reactive, mineral trapping tends to be insignificant, and solubility trapping dominates the whole storage process. If more reactive minerals are present in the geochemical reaction system, there might be a significant change of the formation properties. Therefore, a great deal of specific and detailed information relative to the mineral trapping during  $CO_2$  sequestration is required to assess the feasibility of disposing of  $CO_2$  in a brine formation at any particular site. In Gulf Coast Sediments, 50 percent of the minerals are reactive, and reactive geochemical reaction modeling can be used to investigate the evolution of mineral compositions subjected to  $CO_2$  sequestration. We used the same geochemical properties on our 2D geochemical reaction simulations as Xu *et al.* (2003, 2006b), who did modeling work on Gulf Coast Sediments.

**Geological and Geochemical Structure of Gulf Coast Sediments:** According to Xu *et al.* (2003), the majority of potential  $CO_2$  sequestration studies on Tertiary Gulf Coast sediments are concentrated in the state of Texas. The principal reservoir-quality sandstones within that region are, respectively, the Frio, the Vicksberg, and the Wilcox formations, all of which are found within the lower Tertiary. Of the three formations, the Frio was chosen as a representative

candidate for the sequestration of supercritical carbon dioxide. It is the shallowest of the three formations, but is located at depths between 5000 and 20,000 ft over much of its areal extent, which is sufficient to ensure adequate  $CO_2$  densities for effective storage. The initial mineral composition and kinetic parameters of a representative formation for  $CO_2$  sequestration in Gulf Coast Sediments are shown in Table 4.29.

Mineral	Vol.	A	Parameters for kinetic rate law							
	% Of	(cm <sup>-</sup> / g)	Neutral mech	anism	Acid mechan	ism		Base mechar	nism	
	solid		$\frac{k_{25}}{(\text{mol/m}^2/\text{s})}$	E <sub>a</sub> (KJ /mol	k <sub>25</sub>	Ea	n(H <sup>+</sup> )	k <sub>25</sub>	Ea	n(H <sup>+</sup> )
Primary:										
Quartz	49.75	9.8	1.023×10 <sup>-14</sup>	87.7						
Kaolinite	1.81	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472
Calcite	1.74	Assum	ed at equilibriu	m	1				1	1
Illite	0.86	151.6	1.660×10 <sup>-13</sup>	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Oligoclase	17.82	9.8	1.445×10 <sup>-13</sup>	69.8	2.138×10 <sup>-11</sup>	65	0.457			
Kerogen-O	2.61	151.6	6.918×10 <sup>-14</sup>	22.2	4.898×10 <sup>-12</sup>	65.9	0.777	8.913×10 <sup>-18</sup>	17.9	-0.472
K-feldspar	7.36	9.8	$2.890 \times 10^{-13}$	38	8.710×10 <sup>-11</sup>	51.7	0.5	6.310×10 <sup>-12</sup>	94.1	-0.823
Na-smectite	3.51	151.6	1.660×10 <sup>-13</sup>	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Chlorite	4.10	9.8	2.02×10 <sup>-13</sup>	88	7.762×10 <sup>-12</sup>	88	0.5			
Hematite	0.45	12.9	2.512×10 <sup>-15</sup>	66.2	4.074×10 <sup>-10</sup>	66.2	1			
Secondary:										
Magnesite		9.8	4.571×10 <sup>-10</sup>	22.5	4.169×10 <sup>-7</sup>	14.4	1			
Dolomite		9.8	2.951×10 <sup>-8</sup>	52.2	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5			
Low-albite		9.8	2.754×10 <sup>-13</sup>	69.8	6.918×10 <sup>-11</sup>	65	0.457	2.512×10 <sup>-16</sup>	71	-0.572
Siderite		9.8	1.260×10 <sup>-9</sup>	62.8	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5			
Ankerite		9.8	1.260×10 <sup>-9</sup>	62.8	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5			
Dawsonite		9.8	1.260×10 <sup>-9</sup>	62.8	6.457×10 <sup>-4</sup>	36.1	0.5			
Ca-smectite		151.6	1.660×10 <sup>-13</sup>	35	1.047×10 <sup>-11</sup>	22.6	0.34	2.020×10 <sup>-17</sup>	58.9	-0.4
Pyrite		12.9	$k_{25}=2.818\times10$ $E_a=56.9$	-5 - <sup>5</sup>	$k_{25}=2.02\times10^{-1}$ $E_a=56.9$	8	•			

Table 4.29. Kinetic parameters for mineral dissolution and precipitation.

**Reactive Transport Model Setup:** The sequestration formation is modeled as a circular region of 10,000 m radius with 100 m depth at the bottom center of which  $CO_2$  is injected uniformly at a constant rate of 10 kg/s. A two-dimensional radial model is developed to achieve this purpose. This 2D reactive transport model is a homogeneous sandstone formation of 100 m thickness with a cylindrical geometrical configuration, which is shown in Figure 4.16. In the vertical direction (z direction), 10 layers are used with a constant spacing of 10 m. In the horizontal direction (x direction), a radial distance of 10,000 m is modeled with radial spacing that increases gradually away from the injection well. A total of 50 radial grid elements are used. The  $CO_2$  injection was assumed to continue for a period of 40 years. The fluid flow and geochemical transport simulation was run for a period of 1000 years.

Initial equilibrium concentration of the species in the aquifer saline solution is calculated by using the mineralogy specified in Table 4.28, setting the reservoir fluid to a 0.3 M NaCl brine and then allowing the brine to react with the reservoir for 20 years. This equilibrium calculation model is a batch reaction system. Reservoir temperature is  $75^{\circ}$ C and initial pressure is 200 bars. Kinetic parameters used in this work were taken from the geochemical reaction modeling conducted by Xu *et al.* (2010), which is listed in Table 4.28. Initial concentration of primary aqueous species and hydrogeologic parameters used in simulation are listed in Table 4.30.

Parameter	Value	Elements	Concentration (mol/kg)
Temperature(°C)	75	$Na^+$	0.9905
pН	8.517	$\mathbf{K}^+$	0.5980×10 <sup>-2</sup>
Permeability	10 <sup>-13</sup>	Ca <sup>2+</sup>	0.4737×10 <sup>-2</sup>
Porosity	0.30	$Mg^{2+}$	0.2669×10 <sup>-8</sup>
Aquifer	100m	HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	$0.4562 \times 10^{-1}$
Compressibility	$4.5 \times 10^{-10}$	Cl-	0.1001
Initial pressure	200 bar	SiO <sub>2</sub> (aq)	0.1034×10 <sup>-2</sup>
CO <sub>2</sub> injection rate	10 kg/s	AlO <sub>2</sub> <sup>-</sup>	0.1361×10 <sup>-7</sup>
		SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>	0.1342×10 <sup>-8</sup>
		$\mathrm{Fe}^{2^+}$	0.6457×10 <sup>-3</sup>

Table 4.30. Initial equilibrium concentration of water species (in mol/kg).

Relative permeability for liquid and gaseous phases, and capillary pressure, follows the geochemical reaction modeling work by Xu *et al.* (2003).

Relative permeability for liquid phase follows van Genuchten function (van Genuchten, 1980):

$$\boldsymbol{k}_{rl} = \sqrt{\boldsymbol{S}^*} \left\{ 1 - \left( 1 - \left[ \boldsymbol{S}^* \right]^{\frac{1}{m}} \right)^m \right\}^2$$
(4.6)

Where,  $S^* = \frac{S_l - S_{lr}}{1 - S_{lr}}$ , irreducible water saturation is  $S_{lr}=0.30$  and exponent m=0.457. Relative permeability for gas phase follows Corey function (Corey, 1954):

$$\boldsymbol{k}_{rg} = \left(1 - \overline{S}\right)^2 \left(1 - \overline{S}^2\right) \tag{4.7}$$

where,  $\overline{S} = \frac{S_l - S_{lr}}{S_l - S_{lr} - S_{gr}}$  and irreducible gas saturation is  $S_{gr} = 0.05$ .

Capillary pressure function follows van Genuchten function (van Genuchten, 1980):

$$P_{cap} = -P_0 \left( \left[ S^* \right]^{-\frac{1}{m}} - 1 \right)^{1-m}$$
(4.8)

where,  $S^* = \frac{S_l - S_{lr}}{1 - S_{lr}}$ , irreducible water saturation is  $S_{lr} = 0.00$ , exponent m = 0.457 and strength coefficient  $P_0 = 19.61$  kPa.



Figure 4.16. Conceptual model for the CO<sub>2</sub> injection into a sandstone formation.

Simulation Results and Discussion: Figure 4.17 shows the spatial distribution of  $CO_2$  gas saturation in the saline formation after 40 years  $CO_2$  injection and 1000 years storage period. The  $CO_2$  gas saturation in the saline aquifer rock increases with the injection of  $CO_2$ , especially in the area around the injection well. A volume about 80 m in the vertical direction and 100 m in radial distance is completely filled by  $CO_2$  gas at 40 years of  $CO_2$  injection. Due to the density of supercritical  $CO_2$  phase, the injected supercritical  $CO_2$  fluid at the bottom of the storage formation migrates upward rapidly. Figure 4.17 shows the  $CO_2$  gas plume at the top of the formation after 1000 years storage. With the migration of  $CO_2$  gas during storage period, the

concentration of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> rapidly increases, reflected by the concentration of bicarbonate radical in the saline water (close to 2.0 mol/kg H<sub>2</sub>O in the two phase region, from Figure 4.18). The injected CO<sub>2</sub> is dissolved in the surrounding formation water, forming carbonic acid (H<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>(aq)), which releases hydrogen ions and increases the acidity of the ground water. The dissolution of CO<sub>2</sub> in the saline aquifer directly results in the change of pH value, the pH value decrease to 5.2 in the two phase area, which is shown in Figure 4.19. In the location far from the injection point, the pH value tends to be 9.0 due to clay mineral dissolution that increases the alkalinity.



Figure 4.17. Spatial distribution of CO<sub>2</sub> gas saturation after 40, 500 and 1000 years.



Figure 4.18. Spatial distribution of bicarbonate concentration (mol/kg water) due to the dissolution of  $CO_2$  gas after 40, 500 and 1000 years.



Figure 4.19. Spatial distribution of pH value due to the dissolution of  $CO_2$  gas or mineral composition after 40, 500 and 1000 years.

After the injection period of 40 years, the dissolution/precipitation of minerals present in the aquifer rock occurs due to the chemical reactions between the dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> and minerals. The increased acidity from dissolved  $CO_2$  induces dissolution of the primary host rock minerals. H<sup>+</sup> in the aqueous phase interacts with silicate minerals such as feldspars and clay minerals, releasing cations such as  $Ca^{2+}$  and  $Mg^{2+}$ . Figure 4.20 shows oligoclase volume fraction changes due to acidity increasing. Oligoclase has the largest volume change of the entire mineral composition system. The mineral dissolution increases concentrations of cations such as Na<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and Mg<sup>2+</sup>, which in turn causes complexing of dissolved cations with the bicarbonate ion to form NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, CaHCO<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup> and MgHCO<sub>3</sub><sup>+</sup>, etc. These tend to increase CO<sub>2</sub> solubility and enhance solubility trapping during the long storage time. Also, there are many precipitation reactions between the aqueous species dissolved in the saline water due to the pH value change that form illite, smectite-na, ankerite, dawsonite, magnesite, and smectite-ca. The combined phenomenon of mineral dissolution and precipitation in the saline aquifer can result in changes of porosity and permeability. Figure 4.21 shows the porosity change after 1000 years of  $CO_2$ storage. The precipitation reaction dominates the geochemical reaction process in the two phase area of the model for the long storage period, porosity tends to decrease in the two phase zone around the flow front of  $CO_2$  gas, the dissolution reaction dominates the geochemical reaction process in the front area of CO<sub>2</sub> gas for the long storage period, and porosity tends to increase in the area adjacent to the  $CO_2$  gas front. Figure 4.22 shows the volume of injected  $CO_2$  gas permanently sequestrated in the mineral phase. The maximum volume of CO<sub>2</sub> gas that can be

permanently sequestrated in the mineral phase is  $22 \text{ kg/m}^3$ . From the result of present modeling work, the main trapping mechanism of CO<sub>2</sub> injection in Gulf Coast Sediments is mineral trapping.



Figure 4.20. Spatial distribution of oligoclase volume fraction change due to increasing acidity after 500 and 1000 years (negative means dissolution).



Figure 4.21. Spatial distribution of porosity due to the CO<sub>2</sub> injection after 40, 500 and 1000 years.



Figure 4.22. Volume distribution of  $CO_2$  sequestrated as mineral in the formation rock (kg/m<sup>3</sup> mineral medium) due to  $CO_2$  injection after 500 and 1000 years.

### **THMC Mathematical Model**

A THMC (Thermal-Hydrological-Mechanical-Chemical) simulator is described in this section. The governing equations for this simulator are conservation of mass, describing fluid flow and mass transport, conservation of momentum, describing the mean stress field, conservation of energy, describing heat flow energy transport, and a geochemical reaction formulation describing the geochemistry occurring during CO<sub>2</sub> geo-sequestration. This simulator is based on TOUGH-ECO2N (Pruess, 2005), TOUGHREACT (Xu *et al.*, 2006b), and TOUGH2-CSM (Winterfeld and Wu, 2014).

The conservation of mass equation is based on the TOUGH2-CSM one (Equation 3.15), generalized to account for rate-dependent and equilibrated chemical reactions:

$$\frac{\partial M^k}{\partial t} = \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{F}^k + q^k + R^k_{req} + R^k_r \tag{4.9}$$

where k refers to primary components,  $R_{req}$  refers to equilibrated chemical reactions, and  $R_r$  refers to rate-dependent chemical reactions. The conservation of energy and momentum equations are those for TOUGH2-CSM.

In geochemical reaction systems, the dissolution rate of a certain minerals (i.e., CaCO<sub>3</sub>) is very fast. Thus, the those minerals are always at equilibrium. The mineral saturation index controls the dissolution of the mineral, and is expressed as:

$$F_{m} = \log \Omega_{m} = \log \left\{ X_{m}^{-1} \lambda_{m}^{-1} K_{m}^{-1} \prod_{\kappa=1}^{N_{c}} C_{\kappa}^{\nu_{m\kappa}} \gamma_{\kappa}^{\nu_{m\kappa}} \right\} = 0$$
(4.10)

where *m* is the equilibrium mineral index,  $X_m$  is the mole fraction of the *m*-th mineral phase,  $\lambda_m$  is its thermodynamic activity coefficient (for pure mineral phases,  $X_m$  and  $\lambda_m$  are taken equal to one),  $K_m$  is the corresponding equilibrium constant of the equilibrium mineral,  $C_j$  is the concentration of related primary chemical species or components,  $v_{mj}$  is the stoichiometric coefficient of *j*-th basis species in the *m*-th mineral equilibrium reaction, and  $\gamma_k$  is the activity coefficient of primary chemical species. Reactions involving aqueous and gaseous phases are also assumed to be at equilibrium, so according to the Mass-Action Law:

$$F_g = \log \Omega_g = \log \left\{ \left( p_g \Gamma_g K_g \right)^{-1} \prod_{\kappa=1}^{N_c} C_{\kappa}^{v_{g\kappa}} \gamma_{\kappa}^{v_{g\kappa}} \right\} = 0$$
(4.11)

where subscript g is gas index, p is the partial pressure (in bars), and  $\Gamma$  is the fugacity coefficient. The fugacity coefficient depends on temperature and pressure (Spycher *et al.* 2003).

Aqueous chemical reactions are assumed to be at local equilibrium as well. By making use of the mass action equation for the dissociation of the *i*-th aqueous complex, the concentrations of aqueous complexes can be expressed as functions of the concentrations of primary chemical species:

$$c_{k} = \gamma_{k}^{-1} K_{k}^{-1} \prod_{j=1}^{N_{c}} C_{j}^{\nu_{m\kappa}} \gamma_{j}^{\nu_{m\kappa}}$$
(4.12)

where  $c_k$  is the molal concentration of k-th secondary aqueous complex,  $c_j$  is molal concentration of the *j*th basis species, and  $K_k$  is the equilibrium constant of the k-th secondary complex-forming reaction.

The expression of kinetic rate is given by Lasaga et al. (1994):

$$r_{n} = f(c_{1}, c_{2}, ..., c_{N_{c}}) = \pm k_{n} A_{n} \left| 1 - \Omega_{n}^{\theta} \right|^{\eta} \quad n = 1...N_{c}$$
(4.13)

where positive values of  $r_n$  indicate dissolution, and negative values precipitation,  $k_n$  is the rate constant (moles per unit mineral surface area and unit time) which is temperature dependent,  $A_n$  is the specific reactive surface area per kg,  $\Omega_n$  is the kinetic mineral saturation ratio. The parameters  $\theta$  and  $\eta$  must be determined from experiments; usually, but not always, they are taken equal to one. The temperature dependence of the reaction rate constant can be expressed reasonably well via an Arrhenius equation (Lasaga 1984; Steefel and Lasaga 1994).

For the internal generation term  $R^{\kappa}$  by geochemical reaction, the mass loss and gain of each primary species  $\kappa$  can be expressed as follows:

$$R^{\kappa} = \sum_{k=1}^{N_{x}} v_{kj} C_{k} + \sum_{i=1}^{N_{g}} v_{ij} C_{g} + \sum_{m=1}^{N_{p}} v_{mj} C_{m} - \sum_{n=1}^{N_{q}} v_{nj} r_{n} \Delta t$$
(4.14)

where C are concentrations (chemical reactions are always solved per kg of water, and concentration units used here are mol/kg which is close to mol/l when density is close to 1 kg/l); subscripts *j*, *k*, *i*, m and *n* are the indices of basis species, aqueous complexes, gas, minerals at equilibrium and minerals under kinetic constraints, respectively; N<sub>C</sub>, N<sub>x</sub>, N<sub>g</sub>, N<sub>p</sub> and N<sub>q</sub> are the number of the base species, aqueous complex, gas, minerals, andminerals under kinetic constraint;  $v_{kj}$ ,  $v_{ij}$ ,  $v_{nj}$ , and  $v_{nj}$  are stoichiometric coefficients of the basis species in the aqueous complexes, gas, equilibrium and kinetic minerals, respectively.

#### Fully Coupled Solution Method for THMC Simulator

For the fully coupled approach, the mathematical equations for fluid flow, solute transport and geochemical reactions are solved simultaneously. These equations are discretized using the Integral Finite Difference method (Narasimhan and Witherspoon, 1985) over a grid cell. The equation system for the multi-component reactive solute transport can then be expressed as follows:

$$R_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1} = M_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1} - M_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k} - \frac{\Delta t}{V_n} \left\{ \sum_{m} A_{nm} \left[ u_{\beta,nm}^{k+1} X_{\beta,nm}^{\kappa,k+1} \rho_{\beta,nm}^{k+1} + \underline{D}_{\beta,nm} \rho_{\beta,nm}^{k+1} \frac{X_{\beta,m}^{\kappa,k+1} - X_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1}}{d_{nm}} \right] + \right\}$$

$$\left\{ V_n q_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1} + V_n R_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1} \right\}$$

$$(4.15)$$

$$F^{k+1} = F(X_{\beta}^{\kappa,k+1}) = 0$$
(4.16)

For each volume element  $V_n$ , there are NEQ  $(N_c+N_p+2N_g)$  equations, so a fully coupled reactive solute transport system with NEL grid blocks represents a total of NEL×NEQ coupled non-linear equations. The unknowns are the NEL×NEQ independent primary variables  $\{x_i; i = 1, ..., NEL\times NEQ\}$ , which completely define the state of the reactive solute transport system at time level  $t_{k+1}$ . These equations are solved using the Newton-Raphson iteration, which is implemented as follows. We introduce an iteration index p and expand the residuals R and F at iteration step p+1 in a Taylor series in terms of those at index p. The Taylor series expansions of the residual equations for  $x_i$  (p is NR-iteration index) are:

$$R_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1}\left(x_{i,p+1}\right) = R_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1}\left(x_{i,p}\right) + \sum_{i} \frac{\partial R_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1}}{\partial x_{i}} \bigg|_{p} \left(x_{i,p+1} - x_{i,p}\right) = 0$$
(4.17)

$$F^{k+1}(x_{i,p+1}) = F^{k+1}(x_{i,p}) + \sum_{i} \frac{\partial F^{k+1}(x_{i})}{\partial x_{i}} \bigg|_{p} (x_{i,p+1} - x_{i,p}) = 0$$
(4.18)

Retaining only first order terms, we obtain a set of NEL×NEQ linear equations for the increments  $(x_{i,p+1}-x_{i,p})$ :

$$-\sum_{i} \frac{\partial R_{\beta,n}^{\kappa,k+1}}{\partial x_{i}} \bigg|_{p} \left( x_{i,p+1} - x_{i,p} \right) = R_{n}^{k+1} \left( x_{i,p} \right)$$

$$(4.19)$$

$$-\sum_{i} \frac{\partial F^{k+1}}{\partial x_{i}} \bigg|_{p} \left( x_{i,p+1} - x_{i,p} \right) = F^{k+1} \left( x_{i,p} \right)$$

$$(4.20)$$

The fluid flow and reactive solute transport equations are solved iteratively until prescribed convergence criteria are satisfied.

### Sequentially Coupled Solution Method for THMC Simulator

In the sequentially coupled solution procedure, fluid flow, heat flow and geomechanics are solved for first, followed by solute transport, and then chemical reactions. For the first part of

this solution, only the mass balances for the three components  $H_2O$ , NaCl, and  $CO_2$ , and only the mass loss or gain for  $H_2O$  and  $CO_2$  in chemical reactions, are considered, along with the energy and momentum conservation equations.

After the above solution, the Darcy velocity for each phase is used to solve for solute transport of the other gaseous and aqueous species. The aqueous species are subject to transport in the liquid phase as well as to local chemical reactions between solid and gas phases. Transport equations are written in terms of primary chemical components. Advection and diffusion processes are considered for chemical transport, and the diffusion coefficients are assumed to be the same for all species.

Finally, chemical reactions are solved for on a grid block by grid block basis. The main equations for chemical reactions are mole balance equations for each primary chemical species and saturation index for mineral and gas species. The chemical reactions for primary species are fed back to the first two steps of this solution for the next iteration.

### Verification and Validation of THMC Simulator

The fully coupled THMC model was verified against different analytical solutions for the mechanisms involved in the THMC processes, including equilibrium chemical reactions, kinetic chemical reactions, heat conduction, and consolidation. For the equilibrium chemical reactions and kinetic chemical reactions, the analytical solutions derived by Xu and Pruess (1998, 1999) were used to verify the numerical scheme for chemical reactions in the model. For thermal effects, the analytical solution of a 1D heat conduction problem was derived to verify the heat conduction calculation in the model. For geomechanics, the analytical solution of a 1D consolidation problem was used to verify the model. The verification of the equilibrium chemical reactions is shown below.

### **1D Reactive Transport with Equilibrium Chemical Reaction**

Consider a one-phase, saturated semi-infinite porous medium under steady-state uniform flow. In the porous medium, a mineral AB(s) is dissolving into the fluid and releasing chemical species A and B. This chemical reaction is under equilibrium condition. An analytical solution to this problem was derived by Xu and Pruess (1998, 1999). The saturation index of mineral AB(s) controls the local equilibrium of the dissolution/-

precipitation of mineral AB(s), and it can be expressed as follows:

$$F_{AB} = \log \Omega_{AB} = \log \left\{ \frac{c_A c_B}{K_g} \right\} = 0$$
(4.21)

where FAB is the saturation index of mineral AB(s), and  $K_{AB}$  is the equilibrium constant for mineral AB(s).

Values for simulation parameters are shown in Table 4.31. Figure 4.23 shows the numerical and analytical solutions for this problem. The numerical results agree well with the analytical solution.

Parameter	Value	
Formation length	6.0 m	
Grid size	0.04 m	
Porosity	0.30	
Equilibrium constant	10 <sup>-8</sup>	
Dispersion coefficient	$1 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$	
Simulation time	1.5 days	
Pore velocity	0.1 m/day	
Initial concentrations		
Chemical species A	$10^{-4}$ mole/l	
Chemical species B	$10^{-4}$ mole/l	
Inlet concentration difference	$2x10^{-3}$ mole/l	

Table 4.31: Initial parameters for 1D Reactive Transport with Equilibrium Chemical Reaction.



Figure 4.23. Concentration profiles for two species A and B in a problem involving dissolution of a mineral AB(s) under conditions of local equilibrium
### Applications in CO<sub>2</sub>Geo-sequestration

The sequentially and fully coupled THMC models are applied to simulate fluid transport, geomechanics, and geochemistry in saline aquifers during CO<sub>2</sub> injection and sequestration periods. The geomechanical processes affect mean stress, volumetric strain, rock permeability and porosity. In addition, the geochemical processes, namely the geochemical reactions of rock minerals, gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> and formation fluid, affect the solubility of gaseous CO<sub>2</sub>, rock permeability, and porosity. Nine simulation examples were presented to simulate the THMC processes during CO<sub>2</sub> injection and geo-sequestration processes. The first three cases are THC models to test the validity of the chemical reaction calculation by the fully coupled THMC simulator: two batch reaction models and one 1D reactive transport model. The next three cases are THMC models to simulate THMC processes during CO<sub>2</sub> injection and sequestration periods by the sequentially coupled simulator: one 1D THMC model with complex chemical reactions and geomechanics, one 2D THMC model with complex chemical reactions and geomechanics, and one 2D layered model with complex chemical reactions and geomechanics. The last three cases are THMC models to evaluate the effects of CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution, chemical equilibrium reactions, and chemical kinetic reactions on THMC processes by fully coupled simulator. Two of these are illustrated below, a THC batch reaction model to test the validity of the chemical reaction calculations and a THMC model to evaluate the effects of CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution, chemical equilibrium reactions, and chemical kinetic reactions.

#### **Batch Reaction with Equilibrium Chemical Reactions**

The objective of this example is to validate the equilibrium chemical reaction calculation with the TOUGHREACT simulator. The batch reactor has a single grid cell. There are three phases: aqueous, gaseous, and solid. The chemical reactions for this system are equilibrium ones and consist of various reactions centered around H<sub>2</sub>O, CO<sub>2</sub>, CaCO<sub>3</sub> and NaCl components. The aqueous phase consists of H<sub>2</sub>O, dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>, various ions, and other reaction products; the solid phase consists of CaCO<sub>3</sub> and the gaseous phase consists of CO<sub>2</sub> and vaporized H<sub>2</sub>O. The six primary species are: H<sub>2</sub>O, H<sup>+</sup>, Ca<sup>2+</sup>, Na<sup>+</sup>, HCO<sup>-3</sup>, and Cl<sup>-</sup>. There are twelve aqueous chemical reactions, one gas dissolution and one calcite dissolution, shown below:

$$\operatorname{CO}_2(\operatorname{aq}) \leftrightarrow \operatorname{H}^+ + (\operatorname{HCO}_3)^- - \operatorname{H}_2\operatorname{O}$$
 (4.22)

$$(\mathrm{CO}_3)^{2-} \leftrightarrow (\mathrm{HCO}_3)^{-} - \mathrm{H}^+$$

$$(4.23)$$

$$OH^{-} \leftrightarrow H_2O - H^{+}$$
 (4.24)

$$\operatorname{CaCl}^+ \leftrightarrow \operatorname{Ca}^{2^+} + \operatorname{Cl}^-$$
 (4.25)

$$\operatorname{CaCl}_2(\operatorname{aq}) \leftrightarrow \operatorname{Ca}^{2+} + 2\operatorname{Cl}^-$$
 (4.26)

 $CaCO_3 (aq) \leftrightarrow Ca^{2+} + (HCO_3)^- - H^+$ (4.27)

$$(CaHCO_3)^+ \leftrightarrow Ca^{2+} + (HCO_3)^-$$
(4.28)

$$Ca(OH)^{+} \leftrightarrow Ca^{2+} + H_2O - H^{+}$$

$$(4.29)$$

$$NaCl (aq) \leftrightarrow Na^{+} + Cl^{-}$$

$$(4.30)$$

$$Na(CO_3)^{-} \leftrightarrow Na^{+} + (HCO_3)^{-} - H^{+}$$

$$(4.31)$$

$$NaHCO_3 (aq) \leftrightarrow Na^{+} + (HCO_3)^{-}$$

$$(4.32)$$

$$Na(OH) \leftrightarrow Na^{+} + H_2O - H^{+}$$
(4.33)

The calcite dissolution, occurring between solid and aqueous phases, is:

$$CaCO_{3}(S) \leftrightarrow Ca^{2+} + (HCO_{3})^{-} - H^{+}$$

$$(4.34)$$

The gas dissolution, occurring between gaseous and aqueous phases, is:

$$\operatorname{CO}_2(g) \leftrightarrow \operatorname{H}^+ + (\operatorname{HCO}_3)^- - \operatorname{H}_2O$$
 (4.35)

These equilibrium constants for these chemical reactions are calculated from the EQ3/6 database (Wolery, 1992), and are shown in Table 4.32.

Chemical Reactions	log Keq at 75 °C	
$CO_2(aq) \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^ H_2O$	-6.296079058	
$CO_3^{2-} \rightleftharpoons HCO_3^ H^+$	10.09857011	
$OH^{-} \rightleftharpoons H_2O - H^{+}$	12.70652234	
$CaCl^{+} \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + Cl^{-}$	0.508190954	
$\operatorname{CaCl}_{2}(\operatorname{aq}) \rightleftharpoons \operatorname{Ca}^{2+} + 2\operatorname{Cl}^{-}$	0.549797292	
$CaCO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + HCO_3^ H^+$	6.248545668	
$CaHCO_3^+ \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + HCO_3^-$	-1.247810694	
$Ca(OH)^{+} \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + H_2O - H^{+}$	11.21829089	
$NaCl(aq) \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + Cl^-$	0.582622874	
$NaCO_{3}^{-} \rightleftharpoons Na^{+} + HCO_{3}^{-} - H^{+}$	10.26267908	
$NaHCO_3(aq) \rightleftharpoons Na^+ + HCO_3^-$	0.23805711	
$Na(OH)(aq) \rightleftharpoons Na+H_2O-H^+$	12.88172362	
$CaCO_{3}(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+} + HCO_{3}^{-} - H^{+}$	1.114784395	
$CO_2(g) \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^ H_2O$	-8.168289161	

Table 4.32. Equilibrium constants for chemical reactions in the batch system.

The initial pressure is  $2.0 \times 10^7$  Pa, the temperature is 75 °C, the initial gas saturation is 0.5, the initial porosity is 0.3, and the rock is 50 volume percent CaCO<sub>3</sub>(s) and the rest non-reactive. The initial concentrations of aqueous species are given in the second column of Table 4.33. The geochemical reaction system is in equilibrium, so the system reaches equilibrium once CO<sub>2</sub> contacts the aqueous phase. The simulation results from this model are shown in column three, those from TOUGHREACT are shown in column four, and the error between the two in column five of Table 4.33. The maximum error is 5.25% of the dissolved concentration for CO<sub>2</sub> gas. This error may result from different calculations for the gas properties. A real gas law in used in the fully coupled simulator, but TOUGHREACT uses an ideal gas law. The two dissolution reactions for CO<sub>2</sub> gas and calcite dominate the batch reaction system. The concentrations of CO<sub>2</sub> (aq) and Ca<sup>2+</sup> have a dramatic increase due to dissolution of CO<sub>2</sub> and calcite.

	1	~ 1		
Species	Initial data	Fully-coupled Model	TOUGHREACT	Errors (%)
H <sub>2</sub> O	1.000777701	1.031017331	1.031033599	0.001577854
$\mathrm{H}^+$	3.086551864E-05	2.4055743895E-05	2.320015337E-05	3.687865815
$Ca^{2+}$	4.480199727E-03	3.7897236091E-02	3.724830775E-02	1.742168652
$Na^+$	0.900002495	0.89104278323	0.891138857	0.010781010
HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	1.997463783E-03	6.4692789596E-02	6.338577944E-02	2.061992718
Cl <sup>-</sup>	0.91063342	0.912581963	0.912466106	0.012697125
OH-	1.434349562E-08	1.892240965E-08	1.9503686368E-08	2.980342807
$CaCl^+$	1.724770935E-04	1.393001567E-03	1.3709958965E-03	1.605086527
CaCl <sub>2</sub> (aq)	5.920365310E-05	4.642689752E-04	4.5762974529E-04	1.450786367
NaCl(aq)	8.929786726E-02	8.604992977E-02	8.6185575073E-02	0.15738748
NaHCO <sub>3</sub> (aq)	4.299625245E-04	1.336103042E-02	1.3114010731E-02	1.88363186
CaHCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>+</sup>	2.141691073E-05	5.577979596E-03	5.3798849686E-03	3.682135008
CO <sub>2</sub> (aq)	4.313682112E-02	1.032978014	0.98246004305	5.141987347
$CO_{3}^{2}$	3.706358704E-08	1.625055163E-06	1.6483202384E-06	1.411441489
CaCO <sub>3</sub> (aq)	2.193772781E-08	7.349152087E-06	7.3491650522E-06	0.000176421
$\operatorname{CaOH}^+$	2.770726632E-10	2.960947889E-09	3.0037454186E-09	1.424805505
NaOH(aq)	3.695749549E-09	4.712255947E-09	4.8647524129E-09	3.134722045
NaCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>	3.145720198E-09	1.297723419E-07	1.3184608858E-07	1.572854132
CaCO <sub>3</sub> (s)	0.0	-4.1862475439E-02	-4.096034049E-02	2.202459596
$CO_2(g)$	0.0	1.0623616063	1.009385089	5.248395074
P <sub>co2</sub> (bar)	197.7152456	177.226201	168.4964335	5.180980581

Table 4.33. Comparison between the fully coupled simulator and TOUGHREACT.

Note: The unit of the concentration of aqueous species is mol/l; Minus sign of  $CaCO_3$  concentration means dissolution concentration of solid  $CaCO_3$  into aqueous phase;  $CO_2$  concentration means dissolution concentration of gaseous  $CO_2$  into aqueous phase;  $P_{CO2}$  is the partial pressure of gaseous  $CO_2$ .

#### THMC Model with CO<sub>2</sub> Dissolution

The objective of this THMC model is to exam the effects of CO<sub>2</sub> gas dissolution on the THMC processes of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration. The chemical reaction system is defined as pure CO<sub>2</sub> dissolution.

This chemical reaction system does not consider any chemical equilibrium and kinetic reaction between mineral and aquifer water.

The 1D model is radial and contains a CO<sub>2</sub> injection well at the center. The top and bottom are sealed by upper caprock and lower bedrock. This sandstone aquifer is initially homogenous and isotropic. The hydro-geological properties of the model are given in Table 4.34.

Hydrological parameter	
Permeability	$10^{-13} \text{ m}^2$
Formation thickness	100 m
Formation length	10000 m
Porosity	0.30
Temperature	75 °C_
Initial pressure	$2 \times 10^7 $ Pa
CO2 injection rate	90 kg/s
CO2 enthalpy	$5.632 \times 10^5 $ J/kg
Relative permeability	
Liquid	van Genuchten function (1980)
Gas	Corey function (1954)
Capillary pressure	van Genuchten function (1980)
Stress	
Biot coeffcient	1.0
Poisson's ratio	0.25
Young's modulus	$5.0  ext{ x10}^9  ext{ Pa}$
Initial mean stress	$4.71 \times 10^7 \text{ Pa}$
Linear thermal expansion	1x10 <sup>-5</sup> 1/°C

Table 4.34. Initial parameters for the THMC Model.

The temperature of injected CO<sub>2</sub> is 32 °C, in order to keep it under supercritical conditions. The model is discretized logarithmically into 100 grid blocks in the radial direction. Only small amounts of primary chemical species are in the original aquifer water. The initial concentrations of H+ and HCO<sup>-3</sup> are  $0.4320 \times 10^{-8}$  mol/l and  $0.1960 \times 10^{-7}$  mol/l, respectively. The boundary conditions of constant pressure and mean stress are assigned to the outer radius of the simulation model. All of the aqueous chemical reactions are in equilibrium. These reactions are:

$$OH^{-} \leftrightarrow H_2O - H^{+}$$
 (4.36)

$$(\mathrm{CO}_3)^{2-} \leftrightarrow (\mathrm{HCO}_3)^{-} - \mathrm{H}^+ \tag{4.37}$$

$$\operatorname{CO}_2(\operatorname{aq}) \leftrightarrow \operatorname{H}^+ + (\operatorname{HCO}_3) - \operatorname{H}_2\operatorname{O}$$
 (4.38)

In addition, gas dissolution, occurring between gaseous and aqueous phases, is:

$$\operatorname{CO}_2(g) \leftrightarrow \operatorname{H}^+ + (\operatorname{HCO}_3)^- - \operatorname{H}_2\operatorname{O}$$
 (4.39)

There are three primary aqueous species ( $H_2O$ ,  $H^+$ , and  $HCO^{-3}$ ) and one primary gaseous species ( $CO_2$ ) that are associated with the mass balances, one saturation index equation to solve for  $CO_2$  dissolution, one energy balance equation is to for solve temperature, and one momentum balance equation to solve for mean stress. This fully coupled system thus contains seven equations and the same number of unknowns. Some results for the non-isothermal case are shown in Figures 4.24-4.29.



Figure 4.24. Pressure evolution subjected to supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> injection



Figure 4.25. CO<sub>2</sub> gas saturation evolution subjected to supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> injection.



Figure 4.26. Temperature evolution subjected to low temperature supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> injection.



Figure 4.27. Mean stress evolution subjected to low temperature supercritical CO<sub>2</sub> injection.



Figure 4.28. Dissolved concentration of  $CO_2(g)$  in aqueous phase for nonisothermal case.



Figure 4.29. Concentration of bicarbonate ion subjected to supercritical  $CO_2$  injection.

In Figure 4.24, the pressure continues to build up in the two phase areas (shown later in Figure 4.25), and then moves laterally past that area. The pressure near the injection point continues to increase after the first year, and then tends to decrease later along with increasing pressure in the far end of the aquifer. The pressure profiles in the two phase area have a high slope compared with the single phase gas and water areas.

Figure 4.25 shows the  $CO_2$  saturation profile during 10 years of  $CO_2$  injection. The  $CO_2$  gas front is located at 550 m after 1 year, 850 m after 3 years, 1,150 m after 5 years, and 1,450 m after 10 years. The two phase gas-liquid zone exists within these intervals, and the pressure buildup is significant in this zone.

Figure 4.26 shows the spatial distribution of temperature. Gaseous  $CO_2$  with a temperature of 32 °C is injected into the formation. The temperature front moves with the  $CO_2$  gas that moves laterally. The thermal effect has a significant impact on the temperature of the model. The temperature of formation becomes 32 °C within 38 m of the wellbore after 1 year, 70 m after 3 years, 95 m after 5 years and 130 m after 10 years.

Figure 4.27 shows the mean stress profile. The thermal effect has a significant impact on the mean stress profile. An interval subjected to low temperature supercritical  $CO_2$  shows a decrease in mean stress. Mean stress decreases significantly with a maximum value of  $2 \times 10^6$  Pa in the low temperature area in Figure 4.26.

Figure 4.28 shows the concentration of dissolved  $CO_2(g)$ . The  $CO_2$  dissolution only occurs within the two phase  $CO_2(g)$ -H<sub>2</sub>O area. The maximum dissolved concentration of  $CO_2(g)$  occurs near the wellbore with a value of 2.32 mol/l. The thermal effect has a significant impact on chemical reactions. Low temperature can help more supercritical  $CO_2$  to dissolve into the aqueous phase, and assist in solubility trapping of supercritical  $CO_2$ .

Figure 4.29 shows the spatial distribution of the concentration of  $HCO^{-3}$ . This chemical species as a byproduct of  $CO_2$  dissolution.

# **Summary and Conclusions**

We developed a novel mathematical model of THMC processes in porous and fractured saline aquifers. The novel framework models were designed to keep a generalized computational structure, which can be easily applied for the numerical simulation of other THMC processes. In this case, we are simulating geo-chemical reactions associated with  $CO_2$  sequestration in saline aquifers. Two computational frameworks, sequentially coupled and fully coupled, were used to simulate the reactions and transport.

We verified capabilities of the THMC model to treat complex THMC processes during  $CO_2$  sequestration by analytical solutions and we constructed reactive transport models to analyze the THMC process quantitatively. We presented here one of these analytical solutions, 1D reactive transport under chemical equilibrium. We also presented here two of the reactive transport models, a batch reaction model with equilibrium chemical reactions and a THMC model with  $CO_2$  dissolution. The analytical solutions were matched well by simulation. Some findings from

the reactive transport models include the following. The long term fate of supercritical  $CO_2$  under the subsurface is to be sequestrated permanently as rock mineral in the form of carbonates. Structural trapping is the dominant sequestration mechanism during the supercritical  $CO_2$  injection period, and mineral trapping is the dominant one during the long term storage period. In a typical sandstone formation, with 60 percent quartz, 30 percent plagioclase feldspar minerals, 5 percent chlorite minerals, and 5 percent clay minerals, the efficacy of solubility trapping is 20 percent at the early injection period, which decreases to 12 percent after 10,000 years; the efficacy of mineral trapping is zero percent at early the injection period, and increases to 65 percent after 10,000 years. For coupled THMC processes during  $CO_2$  sequestration, the sequestration is a significant impact on pore pressure, mean stress and temperature, but the thermal energy transport affects those and the geochemical reactions in the saline aquifer, especially for cold  $CO_2$  injection into a deep saline aquifer. Low temperatures also accelerates equilibrium dissolution of gas and minerals, but slows down kinetic dissolution/precipitation of minerals, such as anorthite and kaolinite.

# Task 5.0: Study of Instability of CO<sub>2</sub> Dissolution-Diffusion-Convection Processes

# **Literature Survey**

Density-driven flows in porous media play important roles in a wide variety of applications, such as reservoir engineering, geothermal reservoirs, agricultural product storage system, packed-bed catalytic reactors, and pollutant transport underground and in the atmosphere. Studies on density-driven flows that are directly related to geological  $CO_2$  sequestration are relatively few. The majority of these studies are theoretical and numerical in nature; only few papers present experimental results on  $CO_2$  diffusion-convection processes. A review of these studies is presented below.

Density-driven flow caused by a concentration gradient has a significant effect on fluids mixing in a porous medium under certain conditions. For  $CO_2$  sequestration in saline aquifers, three mechanisms contribute to the mixing of  $CO_2$  with formation brine and dissolution (Ennis-King and Paterson, 2003). These mechanisms are: diffusion of  $CO_2$  into the aqueous phase, reactions in the aqueous phase between dissolved  $CO_2$  and minerals that depletes dissolved  $CO_2$  and draws more dissolution, and convective mixing triggered by the 1% density difference between brine saturated with  $CO_2$  and unsaturated brine. The convective mixing process, in particular, takes place when the brine underlying the gas phase carbon dioxide beneath the seal becomes saturated with dissolved gas. With the creation of a density inversion, when the layer of saturated brine becomes thick enough, an instability occurs and plumes of brine saturated with  $CO_2$  migrate downwards, slowly being diluted as they go. The importance of the convection is that it increases the mixing and dissolution rates by orders of magnitude above pure diffusion. For storage in a formation with no structural closure, the competition between updipping migration and dissolution determines the ultimate distance that the injected carbon dioxide would migrate from the injection site and this has significant bearing on the choice of suitable storage sites.

A lot of theoretical work has been done on the modeling of density-driven flows. Since the governing differential equations are highly non-linear and strongly coupled through dependency of density and viscosity to pressure, temperature, and concentration, there is no analytical solution and numerical methods are necessary to predict flow and transport behavior.

Lindeberg and Wessel-Berg (1996) first proposed that injection of  $CO_2$  into a saline formation and its subsequent diffusion in long times might result in vertical convection. In the same year, they analyzed the basic equations for heat and  $CO_2$  transport which was subject to both temperature variations and molecular diffusion. Real data from North Sea sequestration reservoirs were used to calculate the corresponding Rayleigh numbers, and the conditions under which vertical convective flow might occur were evaluated in media subjected to both thermal gradients and the presence of a  $CO_2$  dissolution-induced dense layer.

Ennis-King and Paterson (2002) used the TOUGH2 simulator to evaluate the  $CO_2$  dissolution rate due to convective mixing. In the same year, they presented that diffusion of  $CO_2$  into the brine layer beneath the  $CO_2$ -cap makes  $CO_2$ -saturated brine denser than the surrounding unsaturated brine in the lower layers. The existence of denser fluid on top of a lighter fluid

makes the system unstable, and convective mixing is then generated. They found that convective mixing can considerably improve the rate of  $CO_2$  dissolution in the brine. The important issue in their model was that they decoupled the multi-phase flow and convection-diffusion processes by simply imposing a boundary condition on top of the brine layer.

Ennis-King and Paterson (2003) performed a linear stability analysis to investigate the role of anisotropy with respect to the onset of convection and compared that with results from numerical flow simulations. Then, Ennis-King *et al.* (2005) developed new results of the onset of convection for a porous medium with anisotropic permeability subject to a rapid change in boundary conditions. Linear stability analysis and the energy method were used to define the critical time at which the instability occurred and the dimensionless Rayleigh-Darcy number for both thermal and solute-driven convection in an infinite horizontal slab. This was then applied to determine the critical time for the geological storage of carbon dioxide. The time scale for the onset of convection in geological storage could range from less than a year (high-permeability formations) to decades or centuries (low-permeability ones).

Hassanzadeh *et al.* (2005) presented numerical modeling of convective mixing for geological storage of  $CO_2$  in saline aquifers. They pointed out that the time to the onset of instability depends on the Rayleigh number and the heterogeneity of the formation. Two field scale problems were studied. The first case was based on the Nisku aquifer; more than 60% of the ultimate dissolution was achieved after 800 years. The second case was for the Glauconitic sandstone aquifer where there was no convective instability.

Riaz *et al.* (2006) used linear stability analysis based on the dominant mode of the self-similar diffusion operator to find a scaling relationship for onset of natural convection. The nonlinear simulations at short times showed good agreement with the linear stability predictions. The dimensional analysis for typical aquifers shows that for a permeability variation of 1-3000 mD, the critical time can vary from 2000 years to about 10 days while the critical wavelength can be between 200 m and 0.3 m.

Xu *et al.* (2006a) also used linear stability analysis and global stability analysis to develop a scaling relationship for onset of convection. The results obtained from these two approaches indicated that an anisotropic system for  $CO_2$  sequestration becomes more unstable when either the vertical or horizontal permeability increases.

Hassanzadeh *et al.* (2006 and 2007) studied the effect of various boundary and initial conditions on the onset of convection in a homogenous and isotropic porous medium using linear stability analysis. They applied the theoretical result to 24 cases in the Alberta basin aquifers and found that more than 50% of the aquifers in the Alberta basin are likely to develop convection over a long period of time and only ten sites had pure diffusive mixing corresponding to cases with low Rayleigh numbers. The onset time of convection was in the range between 1 year and 310 years, and the wavelength was between 1.6 m and 39 m.

Farajzadeh *et al.* (2007) studied the transient density-driven natural convection problem when the top of the porous medium initially saturated with a liquid is exposed to a  $CO_2$  rich gaseous phase, and quantified it numerically. The simulation results showed that the nonlinear behavior

of the flow was strongly dependent on the Rayleigh number. With increasing Rayleigh number, natural convection effects become more significant.

Ennis-King and Paterson (2007) investigated the effect of coupling of geochemical reactions with convective mixing of dissolved carbon dioxide during geological storage by both analytical and numerical techniques. By means of scaling arguments and stability analysis, they found that the time for the onset of convection could be increased by up to an order of magnitude due to consumption of dissolved carbon dioxide via mineralization.

Hong and Kim (2008) extended the instability study considered by Ennis-King *et al.* (2005), Xu *et al.* (2006a), and Hassanzadeh *et al.* (2006) by employing the energy method and linear amplification theory to the larger time domains and anisotropic cases. The resulting stability criteria compared reasonably well with previous theoretical predictions. The anisotropy effect made the system more stable and decelerated the dissolution process.

Rapaka *et al.* (2008) described and used the non-modal stability theory to compute maximum amplifications possible, optimized over all possible initial perturbations. They also presented the details of three-dimensional spectral calculations of the governing equations. The results of the amplifications predicted by non-modal theory compared well to those obtained from the spectral calculations. Then, Rapaka *et al.* (2009) extended the analysis conducted by Rapaka *et al.* (2008) to the important cases of anisotropic and layered porous media with a permeability variation in the vertical direction. Green and Ennis-King (2009, 2010) also extended the study with anisotropic permeability to a vertical heterogeneity model consisting of a random and uncorrelated distribution of horizontal impermeable barriers with a given overall volume fraction and a given distribution of lengths. Numerical simulations were carried out on 2D vertical sections for deep  $CO_2$  injection in heterogeneous formations and convection of dissolved  $CO_2$ , using multiple realizations for the permeability distribution.

Javaheri *et al.* (2009a, b) applied the linear stability analysis of density-driven miscible flow for  $CO_2$  sequestration to deep inclined and homogeneous saline aquifers. The effect of inclination and its influence on the pattern of convection cells was investigated and the results were compared with the horizontal layer. In the same year, they investigated the onset of double-diffusive buoyancy-driven flow resulting from vertical temperature and concentration gradients in a horizontal layer of a saturated and homogenous porous medium using amplification factor theory. The effect of geothermal gradient was considered in this work as a second incentive for convection and the double-diffusion convection. It was indicated that the geothermal effects on the onset of natural convection are negligible compared to the solute effects induced by dissolution and diffusion of  $CO_2$  in deep saline aquifers.

In the above literature review, a number of theoretical and numerical studies on density driven flow for  $CO_2$  sequestration in deep saline aquifers were conducted. The literature search showed that only limited experimental data exist on accelerated mass transfer of  $CO_2$  into reservoir brine due to density driven convective mixing under realistic reservoir conditions. Yang and Gu (2006) studied the mass transfer of  $CO_2$  into a reservoir brine sample experimentally at high pressures and elevated temperatures. They determined the mass-transfer rate of  $CO_2$  into the brine by monitoring the pressure decay inside a closed, visual, high-pressure PVT cell. The detailed experimental results showed that the density-driven natural convection greatly accelerates the dissolution process of  $CO_2$  in brine. Farajzadeh *et al.* (2009) did a series of experiments performed in a cylindrical PVT-cell at a pressure range of 10-50 bars, where a fixed volume of  $CO_2$  gas was brought into contact with a column of distilled water. The results showed that the mass transfer rate across the interface was much faster than predicted by Fickian diffusion, the mass transfer rate increased with increasing initial gas pressure and in the long term it was controlled by diffusion. The diffusion-convection flow observed in experiments was studied by theoretical interpretation, indicating good agreement between the experiments and the theoretical results.

Kneafsey and Pruess (2010) presented the results of a series of CSC laboratory tests performed in transparent Hele-Shaw cells containing water overlain by gas. Laboratory flow visualization tests in transparent Hele-Shaw cells performed to elucidate the processes and rates of the  $CO_2$ solute-driven convection (CSC). Observed  $CO_2$  uptake of the convection system indicated that the  $CO_2$  dissolution rate was approximately constant for each test and was far greater than expected for a diffusion-only scenario. Numerical simulations of the system showed good agreement with the experiments for onset time of convection and advancement of convective fingers.

## **Theoretical and Numerical Characterization of the Instability**

We used our modified TOUGH2-MP to run a simulation, based on Pau *et al.* (2010), that models the density-driven flow instability that would occur during CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration. The simulation was two-dimensional with impermeable top and bottom boundaries and periodic left and right ones. Above the top layer was CO<sub>2</sub>-saturated brine that diffused through the impermeable top into the simulation domain. The CO<sub>2</sub> would then dissolve in the aqueous phase at the system top boundary, increasing its density. Eventually, density-driven convective flow would force this fluid to the system bottom. The temperature was 45 °C and the pressure was 100 bar, typical of conditions at 1000 m depth in the earth. The diffusivity of CO<sub>2</sub> was  $2 \cdot 10^{-9}$  m<sup>2</sup>/sec. Permeability and porosity varied randomly in the simulation domain to facilitate density-driven convection. Average permeability was  $9.9 \cdot 10^{-12}$  m<sup>2</sup> (10 Darcy) and average porosity was 0.30; point permeability and porosity values fluctuated randomly plus or minus one percent around the average. The system was a 1 m square and was discretized into a 100 x 100 grid. Figure 5.1 shows CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 8.33 days. Density fingers are starting to form uniformly along the entire top boundary. These fingers start to coalesce, and by 16.67 days in Figure 5.2 and 20.83 days in Figure 5.3, only a few prominent fingers are present.



Figure 5.1. CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 8.33 days for two-dimensional simulation.



Figure 5.2.  $CO_2$  mass fraction at 16.67 days for two-dimensional simulation.



Figure 5.3. CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 20.83 days for two-dimensional simulation.

We ran a three-dimensional version of this problem with average permeability  $4.9 \ 10^{-13} \ m^2$  (500 md) and porosity 0.15; point permeability and porosity values fluctuated randomly plus or minus one-half percent around the average. The system was a 10 m cube and was discretized into a 50 x 50 x 50 grid. Figure 5.4 shows CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 1,157 days. Density fingers are starting to form along the top boundary. These fingers grow and coalesce, and by 2,315 days in Figure 5.5 and 3,472 days in Figure 5.6, are fully developed and extend to the bottom of the system.



Figure 5.4.  $CO_2$  mass fraction at 1157 days for three-dimensional simulation.



Figure 5.5.  $CO_2$  mass fraction at 2315 days for three-dimensional simulation.



Figure 5.6.  $CO_2$  mass fraction at 3472 days for three-dimensional simulation.

We ran another series of density-driven flow instability simulations on TOUGH2-CSM. The simulations were two-dimensional and the top layer was  $CO_2$ -saturated brine that diffused through an impermeable barrier into the rest of the simulation domain. The transported  $CO_2$  would then dissolve in the aqueous phase at the system top, increasing the phase's density and eventually causing convective flow that would force this fluid to the system bottom. Permeability and porosity varied randomly in the simulation domain to facilitate density-driven convection, with average permeability  $1.9 \ 10^{-10} \ m^2$  and average porosity 0.30. Point values fluctuated plus or minus one percent around the average. The system was a 1 m square and was discretized into a  $100 \ x \ 101 \ \text{grid}$ . Figures 5.7 - 5.10 show the onset of the instability.



CO2 mass fraction, Time=10E6 seconds

Figure 5.7. CO2 mass fraction at 10E6 seconds for flow instability simulation.



CO2 mass fraction, Time=20E6 seconds

Figure 5.8. CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 20E6 seconds for flow instability simulation.



CO2 mass fraction, Time=30E6 seconds

Figure 5.9. CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 30E6 seconds for flow instability simulation.



Figure 5.10. CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction at 30E6 seconds for flow instability simulation.

Figure 5.11 shows horizontally averaged CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction versus depth for the times shown in Figures 5.7-5.10. The leftmost value (at z=0.01) is the CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction for the top layer, which contains CO<sub>2</sub>-saturated brine. This mass fraction does not change significantly with time. The mass fractions at z=0.02 are just below the impermeable boundary and increase for 10 (times 1E6 seconds) to 20 and decrease for greater times. Figures 5.7-5.10 show that the instability starts after time 20. Prior to that, CO<sub>2</sub> is diffusing through the impermeable boundary and accumulating on the other side. The instability onset causes CO<sub>2</sub> to be transported away from there more rapidly, resulting in a declining mass fraction there. At larger depths (greater than 0.12), the mass fraction curves increase with increasing time.



Figure 5.11. Horizontally averaged CO<sub>2</sub> mass fraction versus depth for various times.

We ran another series of simulations of convective mixing with a density contrast caused by variable dissolved  $CO_2$  concentration in saline water. These simulations were modeled after a set of laboratory experiments carried out by Kneafsey (Staff Scientist at LBNL), in which supercritical  $CO_2$  was circulated in the headspace above a brine saturated packed sand in a pressure vessel. As  $CO_2$  is dissolved into the upper part of the saturated sand, liquid phase density increases causing instability and setting off convective mixing. Convection began in the form of small fingers which grew and merged and had the overall effect of increasing the rate of uptake of  $CO_2$  from the headspace into the saturated brine relative to a purely diffusive process. The rate of mixing was determined in the experiments by monitoring the uptake of  $CO_2$  from the headspace. We report below on simulations of this experiment, intended to better understand convective instability and mixing, and to provide a measure of code validation for TOUGH2/ECO2M.

The numerical system modeled had been set up initially as a Hele-Shaw cell (flow in the narrow gap between two plates mimics flow in porous media). We simulated the onset of convection in the form of multiple fingers between two parallel plates set at an aperture of  $0.7 \times 10^{-3}$  m. The gap within the slit is discretized into grid blocks consisting of cubes  $0.7 \times 10^{-3}$  m in edge length, making the numerical simulation two-dimensional. There were  $100 \times 100$  grid (later  $300 \times 300$ ) blocks in each x (vertical) and y (horizontal) directions. The permeability was randomly attributed to grid blocks with a value in the range from  $1 \times 10^{-12}$  to  $9 \times 10^{-12}$  m<sup>2</sup> with no anisotropy in the two spatial directions.

The first row of cells from the top was occupied by gaseous  $CO_2$  with negligible mass fraction  $(10^{-9})$  of liquid water and was at standard atmospheric pressure; the properties of this row remained constant in time. The rest of the model was initialized with hydrostatic pressure and no  $CO_2$  dissolved in the liquid water apart from the second row which was initialized with 0.00142 mass fraction of  $CO_2$  to help initialize instability.

The numerical experiment was run as isothermal. After 50 hours, a set of fingers was already well developed and had an approximate spacing of 2 mm (Figure 5.12a) with a length of 2-3 mm. After 500 hours, the fingers had grown in length and width reaching a spacing of 5 mm (Figure 5.12b) with a length of 2-3 cm. The fingering resembles closely what was observed in the experiments. The numerical experiments following this one will focus on calibrating the model to the actual experiments. In these preliminary simulations, we found that the rate at which fingers developed was too slow by a factor of 100 relative to the laboratory experiments. We adjusted the system properties, processes, and boundary and initial conditions to improve the match between simulated results and experiments.



Figure 5.12. Development of fingers in a Hele-Shaw cell with 0.7 mm aperture. CO<sub>2</sub> dissolves in water increasing the its density and initiating convective fingering.

We experimented with a variety of conceptualizations of the top boundary region (headspace and first row of the saturated part of the Hele-Shaw cell). For boundary condition realizations with no liquid or gas flow allowed across the boundary, convective instability appeared to be suppressed, and the system was dominated by diffusion. In contrast, the experiments has shown fingers developing and associated rapid mixing of dissolved  $CO_2$  into the system.

For boundary conditions in which both liquid and gas were allowed to flow across the boundary, convective instability developed fingers that in time merged together and grew to the size of the cell. Convection occurred at two different scales: while convection at the scale of the fingers grew in time, convection at the scale of the cell remained invariant. This type of boundary conditions modeled relatively well the behavior of the fingers away from the boundary, but did not resolve the detailed velocity and geometric structure at the boundary. In particular, the aqueous phase crossed the boundary instead of flowing parallel to it.

We experimented with boundary conditions that allowed only the gaseous phase to pass through, inhibiting the flow of the liquid phase. This condition allowed a better representation of the flow close to the liquid/gas boundary, but still needed to be calibrated to reproduce the time scale at which the experimental fingering occurred.

In the following set of simulations, there are  $300 \times 300$  grid blocks in each x- (vertical) and y-(horizontal) directions in the high-resolution grid. The permeability is set to equal  $b^2/12$  where b is the gap width in meters

The first row of cells at the top was occupied by a two-phase mixture of gaseous  $CO_2$  and water (aqueous phase) held at atmospheric pressure; the properties of this row remained constant in time. The properties of the second row of cells were a function of the type of boundary condition used and was only single phase aqueous (so-called confined boundary condition) or two phase (aqueous+ $CO_2$ ) (so-called unconfined boundary condition. The rest of the model was initialized with hydrostatic pressure and had initially no  $CO_2$  dissolved in the aqueous phase.

We carried out numerical experiments to test which top boundary condition conceptualization produced better results for validation against the laboratory experiments. For either boundary condition, convective instability developed and the system evolved from diffusion-dominated in the first few minutes of the numerical experiments to convection dominated in the remaining time of the simulation (Figure 5.13). Our results showed good agreement with the laboratory experiments which were characterized by finger development and associated mixing of dissolved  $CO_2$  into the system (Figure 5.14).



Figure 5.13. Convective instability that developed after the first few minutes of the numerical experiment.



Figure 5.14. Laboratory experiment, characterized by finger development and associated mixing of dissolved  $CO_2$  into the system.

The run times for these simulations were very long. The run time had been on the order of weeks for each 90,000-gridblock numerical experiment that we needed to run to simulate a few hours of laboratory time. To speed up the simulations we compared the results obtained with the equation of state module ECO2M with the results obtained with the module ECO2N, which had a longer history of testing. We compiled TOUGH2/ECO2N for use on a massively parallel cluster we are tested it against standard examples. With the new capabilities of running ECO2N on the cluster, and making key comparisons of ECO2N and ECO2M results, we were able to carry out the following series of validation runs with much greater efficiency than before.

Numerical simulations for  $CO_2$  injection with different size of grid cells in the z-direction were conducted to capture the simulation scale for convective mixing during CO2 sequestration. This model was conceptualized as a 2D modeling domain with a thickness of 100 m and a radius of 10,000 m, and it was located at depths between 2,000 m (z = 100 m) and 2,100 m (z = 0 m) from the ground surface. It was assumed to be underlain and overlain by two impermeable upper caprock and lower bed-rock. A  $CO_2$  injection well was located at the bottom of the modeling domain with 20 m interval. In the x direction, it was subdivided by 120 grid blocks with various spacing. In the z direction, it was subdivided under five cases, the first case was 200 grid blocks with a constant spacing of 0.5 m in the vertical z direction, the second case was 400 grid blocks with a constant spacing of 0.25 m in the vertical z direction, the third one was 500 grid blocks with a constant spacing of 0.2 m in the vertical z direction, the fourth one was 600 grid blocks with a constant spacing of 0.167 m in the vertical z direction, and the fifth one was 800 grid blocks with a constant spacing of 0.125 m in the vertical z direction. The total injection rate was 20 kg/s in the 20m's interval for 10 years' injection period. After CO2 injection, the simulation ran for another 10 year for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration. An aqueous diffusivity of 10<sup>-9</sup> m<sup>2</sup>/s of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> was used in the simulation. Along the top and bottom boundaries, no-flow and constant stress boundary conditions were designed to consider the impermeable seal layers. Along the left boundary, no-flow and constant stress boundary conditions were assigned to consider the radial symmetry of the modeling domain related to the  $CO_2$  injection well. Along the right boundary, the constant pressure and stress boundary conditions were assigned to consider the infinite radial extent of the modeling domain.

From the simulation results of this model, we plotted the mass fraction of aqueous  $CO_2$  in every grid cell, and the vertical mass fraction difference of aqueous  $CO_2$  between two closed grid cells along z direction. The profiles are shown in Figure 5.15 for the five cases with different number of grid cells in z-direction.  $CO_2$  injected into the bottom of a saline aquifer is buoyant, and tends to migrate towards the top of the permeable formation. Then the plume of  $CO_2$  is formed. It is indicated that the  $CO_2$  plume is formed within the area of 1500 m after 10 years' injection period and another 10 years' storage period. Along the edge of the plume, the concentration of aqueous  $CO_2$  decreases rapidly under the conditions of different grid cells in vertical directions. The maximum mass fraction difference of aqueous  $CO_2$  in z-direction for case one is 0.055/m in Figure 5.15b, for case two is 0.065/m in Figure 5.15d, for case three is 0.088/m in Figure 5.15f, for case four is 0.110/m in Figure 5.15h, and for case five is 0.110/m in Figure 5.15j. The first four cases show that the gradient of mass fraction of aqueous  $CO_2$  in z-direction are increasing
with 200, 400, 500 and 600 grid cells, which means that the mass fraction differences are under resolved within 0.5 m, 0.25 m, 0.2 m and 0.167 m grid cells. When the grid resolution increases to 800 with grid cells of 0.125 m, the vertical gradients of mass fraction of dissolved  $CO_2$  are resolved under a diffusivity of  $10^{-9}$  m<sup>2</sup>/s of dissolved  $CO_2$  after 20 years. Therefore, the grid resolution, which is around 0.1 m, is adequate to resolve the gradients of dissolved  $CO_2$  concentrations.







Figure 5.15. Spatial distribution of mass fraction and vertical mass fraction difference of aqueous  $CO_2$  with different number of grid cells in z direction: a and b with 200 grid cells; c and d with 400 grid cells; e and f with 500 grid cells; g and h with 600 grid cells; i and j with 800 grid cells. a, c, e, g, and i are for mass fraction of aqueous  $CO_2$  after 20 years' sequestration; b, d, f, and j are for vertical mass fraction difference of aqueous  $CO_2$  after 20 years' sequestration.

After we obtained the adequate grid resolution to model the convective mixing, two sets of numerical simulation were conducted to capture the process of dissolution-diffusion-convection. The first set of numerical simulations was a 2D numerical model with four different random seeds (0.6, 0.7, 0.8 and 0.9) to generate the permeability heterogeneity. This 2D numerical model aimed to capture the early time diffusive phenomenon after the  $CO_2$  plume formed due to  $CO_2$ injection. The grid resolution was 10 mm and diffusivity of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> is  $2 \times 10^{-9}$  m<sup>2</sup>/s. The 2D numerical model had 100 grid cells in z-direction and 100 grid cells in x-direction. The model had an isotropic permeability of 10 Darcy (10<sup>-11</sup> m<sup>2</sup>) initially, and an impermeable boundary was assumed at the bottom of the first layer, which allowed CO<sub>2</sub> to diffuse through the impermeable boundary and accumulate on the other side. Figures 5.16-5.19 show the 2D spatial distributions of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations for four different random number seeds with different simulation times (4  $\times$  105 s, 6  $\times$  105 s, 8  $\times$  105 s, 1  $\times$  106 s, 2  $\times$  106 s, and 3  $\times$  106 s). The fingers of dissolved  $CO_2$  start to be formed with a length of 0.1 m in vertical direction after 4  $\times$  10<sup>5</sup> seconds in Figure 5.16a. The fingers continue to increase with a length of 0.2 m in the vertical direction after  $6 \times 10^5$  seconds in Figure 5.16b. Due to the permeability heterogeneity, the increase of the finger tends to be heterogeneous. After  $8 \times 10^5$  seconds,  $1 \times 10^6$  seconds, and  $2 \times 10^{6}$  seconds, the fingers of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in aqueous phase increase to 0.3 m, 0.4 m and 0.6 m in Figures 5.16c, 5.16d and 5.61e, respectively. Finally, the dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> reaches the lower boundary of the model after  $3 \times 10^6$  seconds in Figure 5.16f. The fingers of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in the aqueous phase in Figures 5.16-5.19 show similar lengths, but have different patterns. The patterns of CO<sub>2</sub> fingers show great differences with time progresses. This phenomenon results from different random seeds used to generate the permeability heterogeneity in the four cases. Figures 5.16-5.19 show that the patterns of CO<sub>2</sub> fingers vary greatly after  $1 \times 10^6$  seconds. We concluded that before dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> reaches the lower boundary of the model, it is evident that convection patterns are quite different in detail, but have similar length overall. The early time diffusive phenomenon can be captured by fine grid resolution, and the permeability heterogeneity affects the pattern of the CO<sub>2</sub> fingers.



Figure 5.16. Spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  after six different simulation times for random number seed of 0.6 to generate permeability heterogeneity.

The second set of numerical simulations was a 3D numerical model with two different random seeds (0.8 and 0.9) to generate permeability heterogeneity. This 3D numerical model aimed to capture the diffusive phenomenon after the CO<sub>2</sub> plume due to CO<sub>2</sub> injection with a longer time scale. The grid resolution was 20 cm and diffusivity of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> was still  $2 \times 10^{-9}$  m<sup>2</sup>/s. The 3D numerical model had 100 grid cells in the x-direction, 100 grid cells in the y-direction, and 100 grid cells in the z-direction. The model had an isotropic permeability of 0.5 Darcy ( $5 \times 10^{-13}$  $m^{2}$ ) initially, and an impermeable boundary was assumed at the bottom of the first layer, which allowed CO<sub>2</sub> to diffuse through the impermeable boundary and accumulate on the other side. Figures 5.20 and 5.21 show the 3D spatial distributions of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> concentrations for two different random seeds (0.8 and 0.9) with four simulation times ( $1 \times 10^8$  s corresponds to 3.16 years,  $2 \times 10^8$  s corresponds to 6.32 years,  $3 \times 10^8$  s corresponds to 9.48 years,  $4 \times 10^8$  s corresponds to 12.67 years). Figures 5.20a, 5.20c, 5.20e, 5.20g, 5.21a, 5.21c, 5.21e, and 5.21g provide the 3D non-transparent view for the spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  in aqueous phase, and Figures 5.20b, 5.20d, 5.20f, 5.20h, 5.21b, 5.21d, 5.21f, and 5.21h provide the 3D transparent view for the spatial distribution of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in aqueous phase. The fingers of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> start to be formed with a length of 3 m in vertical direction after  $1 \times 10^8$  seconds (3.16 years) in Figure 5.20a and 5.20b. The fingers continue to increase with a length of 8 m in vertical direction after  $2 \times 10^8$  seconds (6.32 years) in Figures 5.20c and 5.20d. Due to the permeability heterogeneity generated by a random seed, the increase of the finger still tends to be heterogeneous. After  $3 \times 10^8$  seconds (9.48 years), the fingers of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in aqueous phase increase to 12 m in Figures 5.20e and 5.20f. Finally, the dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> reaches the lower boundary of the model after  $4 \times 10^8$  seconds (12.67 years). Due to the permeability heterogeneity by different random seeds in Figures 5.20 and 5.21, the fingers of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> have different patterns both at the outer edge of the model and inside the model. From the transparent 3D view in Figures 5.20 and 5.21, it is obvious that the CO<sub>2</sub> fingers have different shapes due to the permeability, especially after  $1 \times 10^8$  seconds (3.16 years). Furthermore, Figures 5.22 and 5.23 provide the 3D view from below for the iso-surface contour for dissolved CO<sub>2</sub>. It corresponds to a density of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> (14.6 kg/m3) and a mass fraction of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> (0.015). These 3D iso-surface figures indicate the structure of the 3D fingers clearly. The fingers at early time at  $1 \times$  $10^8$  seconds (3.16 years) are approximately cylindrical in shape and in perpendicular direction. With time progresses, the CO<sub>2</sub> fingers become larger and flatter, which is totally different from the 2D fingers as we can see in Figures 5.16-5.19. From Figures 5.22b, 5.22c, and 5.22d, it is obvious that the number of CO<sub>2</sub> fingers is reduced rapidly and the size of an individual finger gets larger and flatter at  $2 \times 10^8$  seconds (6.32 years),  $3 \times 10^8$  seconds (9.48 years), and  $4 \times 10^8$ seconds (12.67 years). Figures 5.24 and 5.25 shows the y-z plane at x=10m. The cross-section along x = 10 m shows a cross-section of the flat 3D CO<sub>2</sub> fingers observed in Figures 5.20 and 5.21. Comparing Figure 5.22 with Figure 5.23, and Figure 5.24 with Figure 5.25, it is indicated that the permeability heterogeneity affects the patterns of CO<sub>2</sub> fingers in the 3D model. With time progressing, the  $CO_2$  fingers tend to become larger and flatter with less rounded edge, which cannot be observed from the 2D contour as shown in Figures 5.16-5.21.



Figure 5.17. Spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  after six different simulation times for random number seed of 0.7 to generate permeability heterogeneity.



Figure 5.18. Spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  after six different simulation times for random number seed of 0.8 to generate permeability heterogeneity.



Figure 5.19. Spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  after six different simulation times for random number seed of 0.9 to generate permeability heterogeneity.

















Figure 5.20. 3D views of dissolved  $CO_2$  after four different simulation times, in which a, c, e, and g are non-transparent to show the fingers of aqueous  $CO_2$  in the outside walls of the model, b, d, f and h are transparent to show iso-fraction surface inside the model (seed=0.8).









Figure 5.21. 3D views of dissolved  $CO_2$  after four different simulation times, in which a, c, e, and g are non-transparent to show the fingers of aqueous  $CO_2$  in the outside walls of the model, b, d, f and h are transparent to show iso-fraction surface inside the model (seed=0.9).





(c) Figure 5.22. Views from below show flat characteristic of the fingers (seed =0.8).





(c) Figure 5.23. Views from below show flat characteristic of the fingers (seed =0.9).



(c) (d) Figure 5.24. 2D spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  after four different simulation times at a slice inside the 3D model, the slice is located at 10m in the x direction as a yz-plane (seed=0.8).



Figure 5.25. 2D spatial distribution of dissolved  $CO_2$  after four different simulation times at a slice inside the 3D model, the slice is located at 10m in the x direction as a yz-plane (seed=0.9).

#### **Summary and Conclusions**

We reviewed the literature related to the study of density driven convective flows and on the instability of  $CO_2$  dissolution-diffusion-convection processes. We used our TOUGH2-CSM to run simulations that model the density-driven flow instability that would occur during  $CO_2$  sequestration.  $CO_2$  diffused through the top of the system and dissolved in the aqueous phase there, increasing its density. Density fingers formed along the top boundary, and coalesced into a few prominent ones, causing convective flow that forced the fluid to the system bottom. These simulations were in two and three dimensions.

We ran additional simulations of convective mixing with density contrast caused by variable dissolved  $CO_2$  concentration in saline water, modeled after laboratory experiments in which supercritical  $CO_2$  was circulated in the headspace above a brine saturated packed sand in a pressure vessel. As  $CO_2$  is dissolved into the upper part of the saturated sand, liquid phase density increases causing instability and setting off convective mixing. We obtained good agreement with the laboratory experiments, which were characterized by finger development and associated mixing of dissolved  $CO_2$  into the system. We then varied a wide range of parameters and conceptual models in order to analyze the possibility of convective mixing under different conditions, such as various boundary conditions, and chemical reaction conditions. The  $CO_2$  fingers from different simulations showed great differences as time progressed, caused by permeability heterogeneity. The early time diffusive phenomenon was captured by fine grid resolution, and the permeability heterogeneity affected the pattern of the  $CO_2$  fingers. In addition, the fingers from three-dimensional simulations tended to be larger and flatter than the two-dimensional ones.

# Task 6.0: Implementation of Efficient Parallel Computing Technologies

## The TOUGH2-CSM code

TOUGH2-MP (Zhang *et al.*, 2008) is a massively parallel version of TOUGH2 (Pruess, 1991) and was developed to significantly improve computational time for large, complex models. It includes many of the TOUGH2 fluid property modules and other capability of the standard TOUGH2. We used the TOUGH2-MP code as the basis for TOUGH2-CSM.

TOUGH2-MP depends on several other thirty party software packages including Metis (http://www-users.cs.umn.edu/~karypis/metis/metis/download.html), Aztec (http://www.cs.sandia.gov/CRF/aztec1.html), and MPICH2 (http://www.mpich.org/). The Metis package contains software for grid domain partitioning, the Aztec package contains software for iterative linear equation solution, and MPICH2, an implementation of MPI (Message Passing Interface), is a message passing library for distributed memory applications used in parallel computing. We compiled the TOUGH2-MP code by compiling the ten FORTRAN files comprising the TOUGH2-MP source code (which includes the ECO2N fluid property package (Pruess and Spycher, 2007)), and linking the two library files generated from the Metis and Aztec software packages.

### **TOUGH2-CSM Grid Generation**

The TOUGH2-CSM grid generation module (MESHMAKER) can generate Cartesian, radial, and MINC (Multiple Interactive Continua) grids (Pruess and Narasimhan, 1985). Arrays dimensioned to preset values and the TOUGH2-MP grid block naming convention introduced limitations on the largest grid the module can generate. We modified the grid generation module extensively. We dimensioned arrays dynamically, based on user input grid size, and introduced a new grid block naming convention. This convention is based on a 62-character alphabet (digits 0-9, followed by upper and case letters, and then lower case letters) with 5-character grid block names, resulting in just under one billion grid block names. The first such grid block name is "00001" and the last is "zzzzz." We also increased the efficiency of the code greatly, allowing much larger grids to be generated than before, and in much less time.

#### **TOUGH2-CSM Grid block Partitioning**

TOUGH2-CSM generates sets of algebraic equations that are solved in parallel. The structure of these algebraic equations is determined from the grid blocks and their connections to neighboring ones from input data.

Parallel solution of these algebraic equations requires that the grid blocks be partitioned into many sets and mapped into the distributed memory of the parallel computer. During the partitioning process, special care needs to be taken so that the parallel computational load is balanced, i.e., each processor does approximately the same amount of computation, and the communication between processors required by the parallel solution is minimized.

The actual partitioning of the grid blocks into almost equal-sized parts is performed using three different partitioning algorithms that are implemented in the Metis software (Karypsis and Kumar, 1998). These three algorithms are called K-way,VK-way, and Recursive. K-way is multilevel version of a traditional graph partitioning algorithm that minimizes the number of edges that straddle the partitions. VK-way is a modification of K-way that instead minimizes the actual total communication volume. Recursive is a recursive bisection algorithm which objective is to minimize the number of edges cut. Figure 6.1 illustrates the partitioning of a grid containing fourteen grid blocks between three processors (numbered 0, 1, and 2). The vertices of the graph represent grid blocks and the edges represent connections, i.e., interface areas between pairs of blocks.



Figure 6.1. Example grid partitioning of fourteen grid blocks (vertices) between three processors (numbered 0, 1, and 2). Partition boundaries are shown by the thicker lines and grid block connections are shown by the thinner lines.

The Metis software partitions the user-input grid during execution of TOUGH2-CSM. This partition is not done in parallel because the Metis software is serial; consequently only a fraction of the memory and computing power of the platform TOUGH2-CSM would be run on can be utilized during a partition with this software. In order to avoid this limitation, we obtained the parallel version of Metis, called ParMetis (Karypsis and Kumar, 1999), and wrote a stand-alone program that uses it and TOUGH2-CSM input data to generate a stand-alone grid partition that is read as input data by TOUGH2-CSM. This capability increased the maximum grid sized we could partition by an order of magnitude.

### **TOUGH2-CSM Code Platforms**

We initially installed TOUGH2-CSM on a Dell PC with eight Intel® Xeon® E5405 2.0 GHz processors with total memory of 15.7 GB, and a Linux operating system.

In August, 2011, we completed the purchase of a cluster computer for our research group (called Energy Modeling Group) from Ace Computers of Arlington Heights, IL. The cluster consisted of a head node and sixteen compute nodes. Each node had 24 GB of memory and two Intel® 5620 2.4GHZ 4-core processors, for a total of 128 cores and 256 processors due to hyperthreading (excluding the head node). There was 10TB of disc storage. The latest Intel® Fortran and C/C++ compilers were included with the cluster, as well as MPICH2.

In November, 2013, we upgraded our cluster computer. We added an additional sixteen compute nodes, also from Ace Computers. Each additional node had 32 GB of memory and two Intel® E5-2620 2.0 GHZ 6-core processors, an addition of 192 cores and 384 processors due to hyperthreading. The entire cluster now as 32 compute nodes, 320 cores, 640 processors, and 896 GB memory.

### **TOUGH2-CSM Parallel Code Verification**

#### 1) In Salah Gas Project

The In Salah Gas Project, located in central Algeria, is a  $CO_2$  storage project. Natural gas produced nearby is high in  $CO_2$  and this  $CO_2$  is injected back into the water leg of a depleting gas field for geological storage. Surface uplift from  $CO_2$  injection has been measured by satellite-based inferrometry and Rutqvist *et al.* (2010) did a reservoir-geomechanical analysis of In Salah  $CO_2$  injection and surface uplift using the TOUGH2-FLAC numerical simulator in order to determine if the uplift can be explained by pressure changes and deformation in the injection zone only. The TOUGH2-FLAC numerical simulator is a linkage between two existing well established codes, TOUGH2 (Pruess, 1991) that solves nonisothermal, multiphase, multicomponent, fluid flow problems in complex geological systems and FLAC3D (Itasca, 1997), developed for rock and soil mechanics that can handle coupled thermomechanical and hydromechanical processes for single-phase fluid flow. We reran their analysis on our code, and we used our cluster computer to demonstrate the parallel code's ability to simulate larger problems. The simulation used the sixteen original nodes and all sixteen processors per node, a total of 256 processors.

The simulated domain was 10x10x4 km with one 1.5 km horizontal injection well at 1810 m depth and in the domain center. The domain consisted of four geological layers, shallow overburden, caprock, injection zone, and base, whose properties are shown in Table 6.1.

Property	Shallow overburden (0–900 m)	Caprock (900–1800 m)	Injection zone (1800–1820 m)	Base (> 1800 m)
Young's modulus, GPa	1.5	20.0	6.0	20.0
Poisson's ratio	0.2	0.15	0.2	0.15
Biot's Coefficient	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Porosity	0.1	0.01	0.17	0.01
Permeability, m <sup>2</sup>	10 <sup>-17</sup>	10 <sup>-19</sup>	10 <sup>-14</sup>	10 <sup>-21</sup>
Residual CO <sub>2</sub> saturation	0.05	0.05	0.05	0.05
Residual liquid saturation	n 0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3
van Genuchten (1980) m	0.457	0.457	0.457	0.457
van Genuchten, P <sub>0</sub> , kPa	19.9	621.0	19.9	621.0

Table 6.1. Geological layer properties for In Salah CO<sub>2</sub> injection.

The reservoir initially contained water and the initial temperature and pressure at the injection well were 90 °C and 17.9 MPa, respectively. The lateral reservoir boundaries were maintained at constant pressure and CO<sub>2</sub> was injected at 9.734 kg sec<sup>-1</sup> for three years.

CO<sub>2</sub> injection causes surface uplift, a change in reservoir height. Reservoir height is the sum of grid block height over a z-direction column of grid blocks. Using the definition of linear strain from Equation 3.27, we express grid block l height,  $\Delta z_i$ , as:

$$\Delta z_l = \Delta z_{l,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_z \right) \tag{6.1}$$

where  $\varepsilon_z$  is z-direction linear strain and  $\Delta z_{l,0}$  is grid block height at zero strain. Given initial grid block height  $\Delta z_{l,i}$  and linear strain  $\varepsilon_{z,i}$ , we can write Equation 6.1 as:

$$\Delta z_{l} = \Delta z_{l,i} \frac{\left(1 - \varepsilon_{z}\right)}{\left(1 - \varepsilon_{z,i}\right)} \tag{6.2}$$

and surface uplift,  $\Delta z_{uplift}$ , then becomes:

$$\Delta z_{uplifl} = \sum_{l} \left( \Delta z_{l} - \Delta z_{l,i} \right) = \sum_{l} \Delta z_{l,i} \frac{\left(\varepsilon_{z,i} - \varepsilon_{z}\right)}{\left(1 - \varepsilon_{z,i}\right)} \tag{6.3}$$

where the sum over index *l* refers to a z-direction column of grid blocks. Finally, we express linear strain in terms of volumetric strain by assuming isotropic strain:

$$\varepsilon_z = \frac{\varepsilon_v}{3} \tag{6.4}$$

and calculate surface uplift using Equations 6.3 and 6.4.

We simulated a 5 x 5 x 4 km quarter symmetry element of their system with a 1000 x 1000 x 60 grid (60 million grid blocks). The areal grid was uniform. Layers 1-5 were shallow overburden, 6-30 were caprock, 31-40 were injection zone, and 41-60 were base. The injection zone layers were 2 m thick and layer thickness gradually increased away from there, as shown in Table 6.2.

Layer	Thickness,	Layer	Thickness,	Layer	Thickness,
	m		m		m
1-5	180.00	17	15.21	48	6.46
6	181.64	18	12.14	49	9.55
7	144.97	19	9.69	50	14.12
8	115.71	20	7.74	51	20.88
9	92.36	21	6.17	52	30.86
10	73.72	22	4.93	53	45.63
11	58.84	23	3.93	54	67.45
12	46.96	24	3.14	55	99.72
13	37.48	25	2.51	56	147.42
14	29.92	26-45	2.00	57	217.94
15	23.88	46	2.96	58	322.19
16	19.06	47	4.37	59	476.30
				60	704.14

Table 6.2. Layer thicknesses for In Salah simulation.

The simulation took 21.9 days to run with 97.6% of the time used for linear equation solution. The Jacobian matrix had four variables per grid block (three from the ECO2N property module and mean stress) resulting in a total of 240 million equations.

Figure 6.2 shows surface uplift after three years of CO<sub>2</sub> injection. The maximum uplift occurs in the vicinity of the injection well, centered at the origin, and is about 0.02 m. This is in agreement with the value shown in Rutqvist *et al.* (2010) for caprock permeability of  $10^{-19}$  m<sup>2</sup>.



Figure 6.2. Surface uplift, m, for TOUGH2-CSM In Salah  $CO_2$  injection simulation; injection well shown by thick horizontal line at origin.

#### **Summary and Conclusions**

We developed a massively parallel reservoir simulator, called TOUGH2-CSM, for modeling THM processes in fractured and porous media brine aquifers. The starting point for our simulator is the massively parallel TOUGH2-MP code. We made enhancements and modifications to the original code in order to substantially increase the grid size that could be run. We installed and ran TOUGH2-CSM on various platforms, including a multi-core PC and a cluster.

We verified the numerical implementation and parallel code using an example problem from the literature. This problem, with a grid size of sixty million, utilized the cluster's entire memory and all of its processors. We obtained a good match of surface uplift after three years of  $CO_2$  injection into the water leg of a depleting gas field.

## **Task 7.0: Implementation of General Fracture Conceptual Models**

#### Introduction

The technique used in developing and implementing general fracture conceptual models to simulating flow and transport processes of  $CO_2$  in fractured reservoirs follows a generalized dual-continuum methodology (Kazemi, 1969; Pruess and Narasimhan, 1985; Wu and Pruess, 1988; Wu and Qin, 2009). This method treats fracture and matrix flow and interactions using a multi-continuum numerical approach, including the double- or multi-porosity method, the dual-permeability method, and the more general MINC method (Pruess and Narasimhan, 1985). It has been shown (e.g., Wu et al. 2004a and b) that the same continuum concept is also applicable to multiphase flow though single or multiple discrete fractures or fracture network.

The MINC approach is a generalization of the double-porosity concept, originally developed by Barenblatt *et al.* (1960) and Warren and Root (1963) among others, to multiple porous continua. The double-porosity approach is used to describe fluid flow in fractured reservoirs, an idealization of which is shown in Figure 7.1. In these reservoirs, the fractures have larger permeability and smaller porosity relative to those of the porous rock matrix. As a result, a pressure change in the reservoir would travel through the fractures much faster than through the rock matrix. The double-porosity approach assumes that global fluid and heat flow occur mostly through the fractures with a quasi-steady exchange between the fractures and matrix that is dependent on pressure and temperature differences between them.

For many systems, such as those with complex, multiphase flow or large matrix volumes, the assumption of quasi-steady exchange between the fractures and matrix is not a good one because the time scale associated with flow through the matrix is too large. We use the MINC approach to describe flow in these systems. In the MINC approach, flow within the matrix is described more accurately by subdividing the matrix into nested volumes, as shown in Figure 7.2, with flow occurring between adjacent nested matrix volumes as well as between the fractures and the outer matrix volume. Flow within the matrix is one-dimensional and transient and the MINC approach reduces to the double-porosity one if there is only one matrix subdivision.



Figure 7.1. Idealized double porosity model of a fractured reservoir showing fractures and matrix blocks, adapted from Pruess *et al.* (1999).



Figure 7.2. Idealized MINC grid showing fractures and nested matrix volumes, adapted from Pruess *et al.* (1999).

#### **TOUGH2-CSM Multiple-Porosity Geomechanical Equations**

Bai *et al.* (1993) present a generalization of Hooke's law for a single-porosity medium (Equation 3.2) to a multi-porosity one, a common example of which is the double-porosity medium consisting of a network of fractures and rock matrix:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} - \sum_{j} \alpha_{j} P_{j} \boldsymbol{I} = 2G\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} + \lambda \left( tr\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \right) \boldsymbol{I}$$
(7.1)

where subscript *j* refers to a multi-porosity continuum such as fracture or matrix. Expressions for the generalized Biot's coefficients,  $\alpha_j$ , for a double-porosity medium have been presented by Wilson and Aifantis (1982):

$$\alpha_1 = 1 - \frac{K}{K_*} \tag{7.2}$$

and

$$\alpha_2 = \frac{K}{K_*} \left( 1 - \frac{K_*}{K_s} \right) \tag{7.3}$$

where  $K_s$  is the solid modulus,  $K_*$  is the modulus of the porous medium without the fractures, subscript 1 refers to the fractures, and subscript 2 refers to the matrix. We obtain Hooke's law for a thermo-multi-poroelastic medium by including the temperature term from Equation 3.4 in Equation 7.1 for each multi-porosity continuum, since temperature varies between multi-porosity continua:

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} - \left[\sum_{j} \left( \alpha_{j} P_{j} + 3\beta K \omega_{j} \left( T_{j} - T_{ref} \right) \right) \right] \boldsymbol{I} = 2G\boldsymbol{\varepsilon} + \lambda \left( tr \boldsymbol{\varepsilon} \right) \boldsymbol{I}$$
(7.4)

where  $\omega_j$  is the multi-porosity continuum volume fraction.

We combine Equations 7.4, 3.5, and 3.6 to obtain the thermo-multi-poroelastic Navier equation:

$$\nabla \left[ \sum_{j} \left( \alpha_{j} P_{j} + 3\beta K \omega_{j} T_{j} \right) \right] + \left( \lambda + G \right) \nabla \left( \nabla \cdot \boldsymbol{u} \right) + G \nabla^{2} \boldsymbol{u} + \boldsymbol{F}_{b} = 0$$
(7.5)

Taking the divergence of Equation 7.5 and following the same steps as for the single-porosity derivation results in an equation analogous to Equation 3.12 relating volumetric strain, mean stress, pore pressures, and temperatures:

$$K\varepsilon_{\nu} = \tau_m - \sum_j \left( \alpha_j P_j + 3\beta K \omega_j \left( T_j - T_{ref} \right) \right)$$
(7.6)

and an equation analogous to Equation 3.14 relating mean stress, pore pressures, temperatures, and body force:

$$\nabla \cdot \left[\frac{3(1-\upsilon)}{1+\upsilon}\nabla \tau_m + F_b - \frac{2(1-2\upsilon)}{1+\upsilon}\nabla \left[\sum_j \left(\alpha_j P_j + 3\beta K \omega_j T_j\right)\right]\right] = 0$$
(7.7)

#### **Discretization of Multiple-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM Conservation** Equations

The multiple-porosity TOUGH2-CSM mass, energy, and momentum balance equations are discretized in space using the integral finite difference method (Narasimhan and Witherspoon, 1976). For a multiple-porosity system, the simulation domain is subdivided into primary grid blocks with unstrained volume  $V_{n,0}$  and each primary grid block is subdivided into porous continua, each with unstrained volume  $V_{n,0,j}$ . The mass and energy conservation equations are integrated over each porous continuum volume and the resulting set of these equations in residual form is:

$$\left[M_{n,j}^{k}\left(1-\varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right)\right]^{l+1} - \left[M_{n,j}^{k}\left(1-\varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right)\right]^{l} - \frac{\Delta t}{V_{n,0,j}}\left[\sum_{m}A_{nm,0}\left(1-\varepsilon_{A,nm}\right)F_{nm,j}^{k} + V_{n,0,j}\left(1-\varepsilon_{\nu,n}\right)q_{n,j}^{k}\right]^{l+1} = 0$$
(7.8)

where the subscripts n and j appearing together refer to porous continuum j in primary grid block n. The multiple-porosity geomechanical equations are integrated over each primary grid block volume. When this is applied to Equation 7.6, we obtain the following:

$$K\varepsilon_{\nu,n} = \tau_{m,n} - \sum_{j} \left( \alpha_{j} P_{n,j} + 3\beta K \omega_{n,j} \left( T_{n,j} - T_{ref} \right) \right)$$
(7.9)

When this is applied to Equation 7.7, we obtain the following:

$$\sum_{m} \left[ \left( \frac{3(1-\upsilon)}{(1+\upsilon)} \right)_{nm} \frac{\tau_{n} - \tau_{m}}{D_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,n} \right) + D_{m,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,m} \right)} + \left( F_{b} \cdot n \right)_{nm} - \left[ \left( \frac{2(1-2\upsilon)}{(1+\upsilon)} \right)_{nm} \sum_{j} \left[ \left( \alpha_{j} \frac{P_{n,j} - P_{m,j}}{D_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,n} \right) + D_{m,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,m} \right)} + \left( \frac{3\beta K \omega_{j}}{D_{n,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,n} \right) + D_{m,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{D,m} \right)} \right) \right] A_{nm,0} \left( 1 - \varepsilon_{A,nm} \right) = 0$$

$$(7.10)$$

Consider a simulation domain discretized into  $N_v$  grid blocks with  $N_k$  mass components. When using the single-porosity approach,  $N_k$  mass conservation equations, one momentum conservation equation, and one energy conservation equation are associated with each grid block for a total of  $N_v(2+N_k)$  equations for the entire simulation domain. When using the MINC approach with  $N_{\phi}$  multi-porous continua in each primary grid block,  $N_k$  mass conservation equations and one energy conservation equation are associated with each porous continua, and one momentum equation is associated with each primary grid block for a total of  $N_v$   $(1+N_{\phi}(1+N_k))$  equations for the entire simulation domain. The number of conservation equations for single-porosity and multi-porosity simulations are summarized in Table 7.1.

Porosity	Number	Porous	Mass, Energy	Momentum	Total	Total Equations
-	Grid	Continua/	Conservation	Conservation	Equations/	-
	Blocks	Grid Block	Equations/GB	Equations/GB	GB	
Single	$N_{v}$	1	$1 + N_k$	1	$2+N_k$	$(2+N_k)N_v$
Multi	$N_{ m v}$	$N_{\phi}$	$(1 + N_k) N_{\phi}$	1	$(1+N_k) N_{\phi}+1$	$((1+N_k) N_{\phi}+1)N_{v}$

Table 7.1. Number of conservation equations for single-porosity and multi-porosity cases.

#### Verification and Application Examples for Multiple-Porosity TOUGH2-CSM

We describe two simulations to provide model verification and application examples. The first, one-dimensional consolidation of a double-porosity medium, is compared to the analytical solution. The second is a match of published results from the literature, a simulation of  $CO_2$  injection into hypothetical aquifer-caprock systems. In this problem, the authors modeled geomechanical processes by coupling two simulators, TOUGH2, which simulates fluid flow and heat transport, and FLAC, which simulates rock mechanics with thermomechanical and hydromechanical interactions.

#### 1) One-Dimensional Consolidation of Double-Porosity Medium

In this one-dimensional consolidation problem, a z-direction stress is applied to the top of a fluid-filled double-porosity (fracture and matrix) porous rock column, instantaneously inducing a deformation and a pore pressure increase. Fluid then is allowed to drain out of the column top and the pore pressure increase dissipates. An analytical solution to this problem was presented by Wilson and Aifantis (1982). In their analysis, strain is uniaxial and z-direction stress is constant throughout the process.

We simulate this problem in two steps. The first step is the load application to produce the pore pressure increase. We start from an unstrained state where pore pressures (fracture and matrix) and mean stress are both equal ( $\tau_{m,0} = P_{1,0} = P_{2,0}$ ) and impose a greater mean stress at the column top ( $\tau_{m,1}$ ) that induces a pore pressure increase ( $P_{j,1}$ ) in the column after the system equilibrates. For uniaxial deformation in an isothermal, double-porosity system, mean stress, z-direction stress, and pore pressures are related by:

$$\tau_m = \frac{1}{3} \frac{(1+\nu)}{(1-\nu)} \left( \tau_{zz} - \sum_j \alpha_j P_j \right) + \sum_j \alpha_j P_j$$
(7.11)

and using this equation, we calculate the constant z-direction stress ( $\tau_{zz,0}$ ) from the imposed mean stress ( $\tau_{m,1}$ ) and the equilibrated pore pressures ( $P_{j,1}$ ).

The second step is simulation of fluid drainage. The column is initially at the above equilibrated state. We set the pore pressures at the column top to the initial pore pressures ( $P_{j,0}$ ). Because z-direction stress is constant, the mean stress at the column top must set as well, calculated from

Equation 7.11 using  $\tau_{zz,0}$  and  $P_{j,0}$ . Fluid then drains out of the column top as the pore pressures return to the initial values,  $P_{j,0}$ .

Our simulated column was 400 m long with rock properties shown in Table 7.2. The column was subdivided into 400 grid blocks each of which contained two porous continua, fracture and matrix.

	Fracture	Matrix
Young's modulus, GPa	8.0	8.0
Poisson's ratio	0.2	0.2
Porosity	0.004	0.032
Permeability, m2	8.9.10-13	8.9.10-17
Biot's coefficient	0.1	0.9
Volume fraction	0.5	0.5

Table 7.2. Rock properties for one-dimensional consolidation of double-porosity column

Initial pore pressures and mean stress were 5.0 MPa and the imposed mean stress was 8.0 MPa. The resulting equilibrium pore pressures were 6.2 MPa and the calculated z-direction stress was 9.8 MPa. We ran the drainage portion of the simulation for 4000 seconds with one second time steps. Comparison of simulated fracture pressure with the analytical solution is shown in Figure 7.3, with excellent agreement.



Figure 7.3. Comparison of fracture pressure analytical solution (solid lines) to simulation (points) for one-dimensional consolidation of double-porosity column.

#### 2) CO<sub>2</sub> Sequestration in an Aquifer-Caprock System

Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) simulated  $CO_2$  injection into a hypothetical aquifer-caprock system to study  $CO_2$  plume spread, ground surface uplift, the possibility of mechanical failure, and other changes induced by the injection. Their system consisted of a 200 m thick aquifer bounded below by a 1500 m thick base rock and above by 100 m caprock and a 1200 m zone that extends to the surface. In addition, a fault zone, extending through the caprock, was modeled as a high permeability zone. Rock properties for these zones are shown in Table 7.3.

<u>1 1</u>	1	1 2				
Property\Layer	Upper	Cap	Aquifer	Base	Fault	
Young's modulus, GPa	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0	2.5	
Poisson's ratio	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	
Biot's coefficient	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	
Zero stress porosity	0.1	0.01	0.1	0.01	0.1	
Residual porosity	0.09	0.009	0.09	0.009	0.05	
Zero stress permeability, m <sup>2</sup>	10 <sup>-15</sup>	10 <sup>-17</sup>	10 <sup>-13</sup>	10 <sup>-17</sup>	10 <sup>-12</sup>	

Table 7.3. Rock properties for aquifer-caprock system.

CO<sub>2</sub> was injected at a constant rate, 0.05 kg/sec-m, at the aquifer bottom for ten years. They simulated this system using the coupled TOUGH2-FLAC simulator (Rutqvist *et al.*, 2002), with TOUGH2 handling multiphase flow and heat transport and FLAC handling rock deformation.

We reran their case of homogeneous caprock without fractures, using effective stress dependent porosity and permeability (Equations 3.48 and 3.49). Figures 7.4 and 7.5 compare  $CO_2$  saturation profiles after ten years injection, with quantitative similarity.



Figure 7.4. CO<sub>2</sub> saturation profile at ten years for TOUGH2-CSM simulation.


Figure 7.5. Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) CO<sub>2</sub> saturation.

 $CO_2$  injection increases the pore pressure, resulting in changes to mean stress and volumetric strain. Ground surface uplift is calculated from volumetric strain changes by summation over z-direction grid block columns and the assumption of strain isotropy. Figures 7.6 and 7.7 compare surface uplift at various times. These simulations show similar surface uplift profiles.



Figure 7.6. TOUGH2-CSM surface uplift at 1, 3, and 10 years.



Figure 7.7. Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) surface uplift.

Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) also studied the effects of a vertical fracture zone in the caprock above the aquifer. We simulated this fracture zone by treating a column of grid blocks spanning the caprock zone as double porosity (fracture and matrix) with the rest of the grid being single porosity. Figures 7.8 and 7.9 compare  $CO_2$  saturation profiles after ten years injection, again with quantitative similarity.



Figure 7.8 TOUGH2-CSM CO<sub>2</sub> saturation profile at 10 years with fracture in caprock.



Figure 7.9 Rutqvist and Tsang (2002) CO<sub>2</sub> saturation profile with fracture in caprock.

## **Summary and Conclusions**

We extended the single-porosity TOUGH2-CSM formulation to multi-porosity media, an example of which is fractured brine aquifers. We developed an extended version of Hooke's law for thermo-multi-poroelastic media. We then derived, using that version of Hooke's law and the other fundamental equations describing deformation of elastic media, a momentum conservation equation for multi-porosity media that relates mean stress and porous continua pressures and temperatures. We incorporated that momentum conservation equation alongside the mass and energy conservation equations from the TOUGH2 formulation. We simulate multi-porosity media using the MINC model.

We verified the simulator formulation and numerical implementation using an analytical solution and an example problem from the literature. For the former, we simulated one-dimensional consolidation problem of a double-porosity medium. For the latter, we simulated  $CO_2$  injection into a hypothetical aquifer-caprock system and obtained a good match of  $CO_2$  saturation profiles for a vertical fractured zone present in the caprock, as well as a good match of surface uplift and  $CO_2$  saturation profiles for the system with unfractured caprock.

## References

Abousleiman Y., Cheng, A. H.-D., Cui L., Detournay, E., and Roegiers, J.-C.: Mandel's problem revisited. Géotechnique. 46:2 (1996) pp. 187-195.

Allis, R., White, S., Chidsey, T., Gwynn, W., Morgan, C., Adams, M., *et al.*: 2001. Natural CO<sub>2</sub> reservoirs on the Colorado plateau and southern rocky mountains: candidates for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration. Proceedings of the First National Conference on Carbon Sequestration, Washington, DC, May 2001.

André, L., Audigane, P., Azaroual, M., and Menjoz, A.: Numerical modeling of fluid-rock chemical interactions at the supercritical  $CO_2$ -liquid interface during  $CO_2$  injection into a carbonate reservoir, the Dogger aquifer (Paris Basin, France). Energy Conversion and Management: 48, 1782-1797, 2007.

Audigane, P., Gaus, I., Pruess, K., Xu, T.: A long term 2D vertical modeling study of CO<sub>2</sub> Storage Sleipner (North Sea) using Toughreact. PROCEEDINGS, TOUGH Symposium 2006, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, California, May 15-17, 2006.

Audigane, P., Gaus, I., Czernichowski-Lauriol, I., Pruess, K., and Xu, T.: Two-dimensional reactive transport modeling of  $CO_2$  injection in a saline aquifer at the Sleipner site, North Sea. American Journal of Science, 307, 974-1008, 2007.

Bachu, S.: Sequestration of  $CO_2$  in geological media in response climate change: capacity of deep saline aquifers to sequester  $CO_2$  in solution. Ener. Convers. Mgmt (2003), 44, 3151–3175.

Bachu, S., Gunter, W. D., and Perkins, E. H.: Aquifer disposal of CO<sub>2</sub>: Hydrodynamic and mineral trapping. Energy Conrers. Mgmt (1994), 35(4), 269-279.

Bacona, D. H., Sassb, B. M., Bhargavab, M., Sminchakb, J., asd Guptab, N.: Reactive transport modeling of  $CO_2$  and  $SO_2$  injection into deep saline formations and their effect on the hydraulic properties of host rocks. Energy Procedia: 1, 3283-3290, 2009.

Bai, M., Elsworth, D., and Roegiers, J.-C.: Modeling of naturally fractured reservoirs using deformation dependent flow mechanism. Int. J. Rock Mech. Min. Sci. and Geomech. Abstr. 30:7 (1993), pp.1185-1191.

Barenblatt, G.E., Zheltov, I.P. and Kochina, I.N.: Basic concepts in the theory of seepage of homogenous liquids in fractured rocks. J. Appl. Math. (USSR) 24:5 (1960), pp.1286-1303.

Bear, J.: Dynamics of fluids in porous materials. Elsevier, New York, USA, 1972.

Berger, P. M., Roy, W. R., and Mehnert, E.: Geochemical modeling of carbon sequestration, MMV, and EOR in the Illinois Basin. Energy Procedia: 1, 3437-3444, 2009.

Bethke, C. M.: 2002. The Geochemists Workbench Release 4.0: A Users Guide to Rxn, Act2, Tact, React, and Gtplot.

Biot, M.A.: General theory of three-dimensional consolidation. J. Appl. Phys. 12 (1941), pp. 155-164.

Biot, M.A. and Willis, D.G.: The elastic coefficients of the theory of consolidation. J. Appl. Mech. 24 (1957), pp. 594–601.

Cantucci, B., Montegrossi, G., Vaselli, O., Tassi, F., Quattrocchi, F., and Perkins, E. H.: Geochemical modeling of CO<sub>2</sub> storage in deep reservoirs: The Weyburn Project (Canada) case study. Chemical Geology: 265, 181-197, 2009.

Carroll, M.M. and Katsube, N.: The role of the Terzaghi stress in linearly elastic deformation. ASME J. Energy Res. Technol. 105 (1983), pp. 509-511.

Cipoli F., Gambardella B., Marini L., Ottonello G., and Zuccolini M. V.: Geochemistry of high-PH waters from serpentinites of the Gruppo di Voltri (Genova, Italy) and reaction path modeling of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in serpentinite aquifers. Applied Geochemistry: 19, 787-802, 2004.

Corey, A. T.: 1954. The Interrelation between Gas and Oil Relative Permeabilities. Producers monthly, 19(1), 38-41.

Credoz, A., Bildstein, O., Jullien, M., Raynal, J., Petronin, J., Lillo, M., Pozo, C., and Geniaut, G.: 2009. Experimental and Modeling Study of Geochemical Reactivity between Clayey Caprocks and CO<sub>2</sub> in Geological Storage Conditions. Energy Procedia, 1(1), 3445-3452.

Davies, J. P. and Davies, D. K.: Stress-dependent permeability: characterization and modelling. SPE Journal 6:2 (2001), pp. 224-235.

Davison, R., Mayder, A., Hladiuk, D., and Jarrell, J. L: Zama acid gas disposal/miscible flood implementation and results, 47th Annual Technical Meeting of the Petroleum Society in Calgary, Alberta, Canada, June 10 -12, 1996.

Delshad, M., Thomas, S. G., and Wheeler, M. F.: Parallel numerical reservoir simulations of non-isothermal compositional flow and chemistry. 2009 SPE Reservoir Simulation Symposium held in The Woodlands, Texas, USA, 2-4 February 2009.

Doughty, C.: Flow modeling for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration: the Frio Brine Pilot: presented at the American Geophysical Union Fall Meeting, San Francisco, California, December 5–9, 2005, paper GC13A-1220. GCCC Digital Publication Series #05-03d, pp. 1-2.

Duan, Z. H., and Sun, R.: (2003) An improved model calculating CO<sub>2</sub> solubility in pure water and aqueous NaCl solutions from 257 to 533 K and from 0 to 2000 bar. Chem. Geol. 193, 257–271.

Emberley, S., Hutcheon, I., Shevalier, M., Durocher, K., Mayer, B., Gunter, W. D., and Perkins, E. H.: 2005. Monitoring of Fluid-rock Interaction and CO<sub>2</sub> Storage through Produced Fluid Sampling at the Weyburn CO2-injection Enhanced Oil Recovery Site, Saskatchewan, Canada. Applied Geochemistry, 20(6), 1131-1157.

Ennis-King, J. and Paterson, L.: Rate of dissolution due to convective mixing in the underground storage of carbon dioxide, presented at 6th International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies, Kyoto, Japan, 2002.

Ennis-King, J., Paterson, L.: Role of convective mixing in the long-term storage of carbon dioxide in deep saline formations. SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition held in Denver, Colorado, U.S.A., 5-8 October 2003.

Ennis-King, J., Paterson, L.: Coupling of geochemical reactions and convective mixing in the long-term geological storage of carbon dioxide. International Journal of Greenhouse Gas Control I, 86-93, 2007.

Ennis-King, J., Preston, I., and Paterson, L.: Onset of convection in anisotropic porous media subject to a rapid change in boundary conditions, Phys. Fluids , 17 084107, 2005.

Farajzadeh, R., Salimi, H., Zitha, P. L. J., and Bruining, H.: Numerical simulation of densitydriven natural convection in porous media with application for CO<sub>2</sub> injection projects. International Journal of Heat and Mass Transfer 50, 5054-5064, 2007.

Farajzadeh, R., Zitha, P. L. J., and Bruining, H.: Enhanced mass transfer of CO<sub>2</sub> into water: experiment and modeling. 2009 SPE EUROPEC/EAGE Annual Conference and Exhibition held in Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 8-11, June 2009.

Feely, R. A., Sabine, C. L., Lee, K., Berelson, W., Kleypas, J., Fabry, V. J., and Millero, F. J.: 2004. Impact of anthropogenic CO<sub>2</sub> on the CaCO<sub>3</sub> system in the oceans. Science, 305 (5682), 362-366.

Förster, R. Giese, C. Juhlin, B. Norden, N. Springer, and CO2SINK Group: The Geology of the CO2SINK Site: From Regional Scale to Laboratory Scale, Energy Procedia, Vol. 1, Issue 1, February 2009, Pages 2911-2918.

Frangeul, J., Nghiem, L., Emmanuel, C., and Thibeau, S.: Sleipner/Utsira CO<sub>2</sub> geological storage: full field flow and geochemical coupling to assess the long term fate of the CO<sub>2</sub>: Dallas, Texas, 18-21 April, 2004, Proceedings AAPG Annual Conference, AAPG 86278, 2004.

Gaus, I., Azaroual, M., and Czernichowski-Lauriol, I.: Reactive transport modeling of dissolved CO<sub>2</sub> in the cap rock base during CO<sub>2</sub>sequestration (Sleipner Site, North Sea). Second Annual Conference on Carbon Sequestration, May 5-8th, 2003.

Gaus, I., Azaroual, M., and Czernichowski-Lauriol, I.: Reactive transport modelling of the impact of  $CO_2$  injection on the clayey cap rock at Sleipner (North Sea), Chemical Geology 217 (2005) 319–337.

Geertsma, J.: The effect of fluid pressure decline on volumetric changes of porous rock. Trans. AIME 210 (1957), pp. 331-339.

Gobran, B.D., Brigham, W.E. and Ramey, H.J. Jr.: Absolute permeability as a function of confining pressure, pore pressure, and temperature. SPE Formation Evaluation, March 1987, pp. 77-84.

Gherardi, F., Xu, T., and Pruess, K. 2007.: Numerical modeling of self-limiting and self enhancing caprock alteration induced by CO<sub>2</sub> storage in a depleted gas reservoir. Chemical Geology, 244(1-2), 103-129.

Green C., P., Ennis-King, J., and Pruess, K.: Effect of vertical heterogeneity on long-term migration of CO<sub>2</sub> in saline formations. Energy Procedia 1: 1823-1830, 2009.

Green, C. P. and Ennis-King, J.: Effect of vertical heterogeneity on long-term migration of CO<sub>2</sub> in saline formations. Transp. Porous Med., 82, 31-47, 2010.

Gunter, W.D., Perkins, E.H., and Hutcheon, I.: Aquifer disposal of acid gases: modeling of water-rock reactions for trapping of acid wastes. Applied Geochemistry: 15, 1085-1095, 2000.

Gunter, W.D., Mavor, M.J., and Robinson, J.R.: CO<sub>2</sub> storage and enhanced methane production: field testing at Fenn-Big Valley, Alberta, Canada, with Application, Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies: Volume I. Rubin, E.S., Keith, D.W., and Gilboy, C.F. (eds), Elsevier Ltd., 413-421 (2005).

Gutierrez, M. and Lewis, R.W.: Petroleum reservoir simulation coupling fluid flow and geomechanics. SPE Reservoir Evaluation and Engineering, June 2001, pp. 164-172.

Hassanzadeh, H., Pooladi-Darvish, M., and Keith, D.: Modeling of convective mixing in CO<sub>2</sub> storage. Journal of Canadian Petroleum Technology. 44 (10) 43-51, 2005.

Hassanzadeh, H. Pooladi-Darvish, M. and Keith, D.: Stability of a fluid in a horizontal saturated porous layer: Effect of non-linear concentration profile initial and boundary conditions, Transport Porous Med (2006) 65: 193-211, 2006.

Hassanzadeh, H., Pooladi-Darvish, M., and Keith, D.: Scaling behavior of convective mixing, with application to geological storage of CO<sub>2</sub>. AIChE Journal, Vol. 53, No. 5: 1121-1131, May 2007.

Holt, T., I., *et al.*: Underground storage of CO<sub>2</sub> in aquifers and oil reservoirs. Ener. Convers. Mgmt. (1995), 36, 535–538.

Hong, J. S. and Kim, M. C.: Effect of anisotropy of porous media on the onset of buoyancydriven convection. Transport Porous Med 72, 241-253, 2008.

IPCC: 2005. IPCC Special Report on Carbon Dioxide Capture and Storage. New York, NY, USA: Cambridge University Press.

IPCC: 2007. Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA: Cambridge University Press.

Itasca Consulting Group, Inc.: FLAC3D manual: fast Lagrangian analysis of continua in three dimensions-version 2.0. Itasca Consulting Group, Inc, Minnesota, 1997.

Jaeger, J. C., Cook, N. G. W. and Zimmerman, R. W.: *Fundamentals of rock mechanics*, Wiley-Blackwell Publishing, MA, 2007.

James, C., *et al.*, 2005: Anthropogenic ocean acidification over the twenty-first century and its impact on calcifying organisms, Nature 437, 681-686 (29 September 2005).

Javaheri, M., Abedi, J., and Hassanzadeh, H.: Onset of convection in CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in deep inclined saline aquifers. Journal of Canadian Petroleum Technology, v48, n8, p22-27, August 2009a.

Javaheri, M., Abedi, J., and Hassanzadeh, H.: Linear stability analysis of double-diffusive convection in porous media, with application to geological storage of CO<sub>2</sub>. Transp. Porous Med. December 2009b.

Johnson, J. W., Nitao, J. J., and Knauss, K. G.: 2001, Reactive transport modeling of CO<sub>2</sub> storage in saline aquifers to elucidate fundamental processes, trapping mechanisms and sequestration partitioning. The First National Conference on Carbon Sequestration, May 14-17, 2001, Washington, DC.

Karypis, G. and Kumar, V.: A parallel algorithm for multilevel graph partitioning and sparse matrix ordering. Journal of Parallel and Distributed Computing 48 (1998), pp. 71-85.

Karypis, G. and Kumar, V.: A fast and high quality multilevel scheme for partitioning irregular graphs. Siam J. Sci. Comput. 20:1 (1999), pp. 359-392.

Katz, D.L. and R.L. Lee.: *Natural gas engineering*, McGraw-Hill Publ. Comp., New York, NY 1990.

Kazemi, H.: Pressure transient analysis of naturally fractured reservoirs with uniform fracture distribution. Soc. Pet. Eng., (1969). 451-62. Trans., AIME, 246.

Ketzer, J. M., Iglesias, R., Einloft, S., Dullius, J., Ligabue, R., and de Lima, V.: Water-rock- CO<sub>2</sub> interactions in saline aquifers aimed for carbon dioxide storage: Experimental and numerical

modeling studies of the Rio Bonito Formation (Permian), southern Brazil. Applied Geoche-mistry: 24, 760-767, 2009.

Kharaka, Y. K., Cole, D. R., Thordsen, J. J., Kakouros, E., and Nance, H. S.: Gas-water-rock interactions in sedimentary basins: CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in the Frio Formation, Texas, USA. Journal of Geochemical Exploration: 89, 183-186, 2006.

Kneafsey, T. J., Pruess, K.: Laboratory flow experiments for visualizing carbon dioxide-induced, density-driven brine convection. Transp. Porous Med 82, 123-139, 2010.

Kumar, A., Ozah, R., Noh, M., Pope, G.A., Sepehrnoori, K., Bryant, S., and Lake, L.W.: Reservoir simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> storage in deep saline aquifers, SPE 89343, SPE Journal, 2005.

Lasaga, A. C.: 1984. Chemical kinetics of water-rock interactions. Journal of Geophysical Research, 89(B6), 4009-4025.

Lagneau V., Pipart A. and Catalette H.: (2005) Reactive transport modelling and long term behaviour of  $CO_2$  sequestration in saline aquifers. Oil and Gas Science and Technology 60: 231-247.

Leverett, M.C.: Capillary behavior in porous media. Trans. AIME 142 (1941), pp. 341-358.

Law, H. S. and Bachu, S.: Hydrological and numerical analysis of CO<sub>2</sub> disposal in deep aquifer systems in the Alberta sedimentary basin. Ener. Convers. Mgmt (1996), 37(6-8), 1167-1174.

Lindeburg, E.: Escape of  $CO_2$  from large horizontal aquifers confined only by a cap seal. Conference: Greenhouse Gases: Mitigation Options (1995).

Lindeberg, E. and Wessel-Berg, D.: Vertical convection in an aquifer column under a gas cap of CO<sub>2</sub>, Energy Conversion and Management, 38 S 229-234, 1996.

Mandel, J.: Consolidation des sols (etude mathematique). Geotechnique (1953) pp. 3287–3299.

Mavor, M.J. and Gunter, W.D.: Secondary porosity and permeability of coal vs. gas composition and pressure, SPE Reservoir Evaluation and Engineering, 114-125 (2006).

McKee, C.R., Bumb, A.C. and Koenig, R.A.: Stress-dependent permeability and porosity of coal and other geologic formations. SPE Formation Evaluation 3:1 (1988), pp. 81-91.

McTigue, D.F.: Thermoelastic response of fluid-saturated porous rock. Journal of Geophysical Research 91:9 (1986), pp. 9533-9542.

Michael, K. and Buschkuehle, B.E.M.: Acid-gas injection at West Stoddart, British Columbia: An analogue for the detailed hydrogeological characterization of a CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration site, Journal of Geochemical Exploration, 89:280-283 (2006). Millero, F. J. 1995. Thermodynamics of the carbon dioxide system in the oceans. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta, 59(4), 661-677.

Mito, S., Xue, Z., and Ohsumi, T.. Case study of geochemical reactions at the Nagaoka CO<sub>2</sub> injection site, Japan. International Journal of Greenhouse Gas Control: 2, 308-319, 2008.

Narashimhan, T. N. and Witherspoon, P. A.: An integrated finite difference method for analysis of fluid flow in porous media. Water Resources Res. 12 (1976), pp. 57–64.

Nghiem, L., Sammon, P., Grabenstetter, J., and Ohkuma, H.: Modeling CO<sub>2</sub> storage in aquifers with a fully-coupled geochemical EOS compositional simulator, SPE/DOE 14th Symposium on Improved Oil recovery, Tulsa, Oklahoma, 17-21 April, 2004.

Norris, A.: On the correspondence between poroelasticity and thermoelasticity. J. Appl. Phys. 71 (1992), pp.1138-1141.

Nur, A. and Byerlee, J.D.: An exact effective stress law for elastic deformation of rock with fluids. J. Geophys. Res. 76 (1971), pp. 6414-6419.

Ostensen, R.W.: The effect of stress-dependent permeability on gas production and well testing. SPE Form. Eval. 1:3 (1986), pp. 227–235.

Ozah, R.C., Lakshminarasimhan, S., Sephrenoori, K., and Bryant, S.L.: Numerical simulation of the storage of pure  $CO_2$  and  $CO_2$ -H<sub>2</sub>S gas Mixture in Deep Saline Aquifers. 2005 SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition held in Dallas, Texas, U.S.A., 9-12 October 2005.

Palmer, I., Mavor, M., and Gunter, B.: Permeability changes in coal seams during production and injection, Proceedings of the 2007 International Coalbed Methane Symposium in Tuscaloosa, Alabama, Paper 0713.

Parkhurst, D. L., Appelo, C. A. J., *et al.*: 1999. User's guide to PHREEQC (Version 2): A computer program for speciation, batch-reaction, one-dimensional transport, and inverse geochemical calculations.

Pau, G. S. H., Bell, J. E., Pruess, K., Almgren, A. S., Lijewski, M. J., and Zhang, K.: High resolution simulation and characterization of density-driven flow in  $CO_2$ , Adv. Water Res. 2010; 33: 443–445.

Pruess, K.: TOUGH2—a general purpose numerical simulator for multiphase fluid and heat flow. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory Report LBL-29400, Berkeley, CA, 1991.

Pruess, K.: Numerical simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> leakage from a geologic disposal reservoir, including transitions from super- to sub-critical conditions, and boiling of liquid CO<sub>2</sub>, Soc. Pet. Eng. J., pp. 237 - 248, June 2004.

Pruess, K.: 2005. ECO2N: A TOUGH2 fluid property module for mixtures of water, NaCl, and CO<sub>2</sub>. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, California.

Pruess, K.: Leakage of CO<sub>2</sub> from geologic storage: Role of secondary accumulation at shallow depth, Int. J. Greenhouse Gas Control, Vol. 2, Issue 1, pp. 37–46, doi:10.1016/S1750-5836(07)00095-3, 2008.

Pruess, K. and Narasimhan, T.N.: A practical method for modeling fluid and heat flow in fractured porous media. Soc. Pet. Eng. J. 25:1 (1985), pp. 14-26.

Pruess, K., Oldenburg, C. and Moridis G.: TOUGH2 user's guide, version 2.0. Report LBNL-43134, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, California, 1999.

Pruess, K. and Spycher, N.: ECO2N – a fluid property module for the TOUGH2 code for studies of  $CO_2$  storage in saline aquifers, Energy Conversion and Management, Volume 48, Issue 6, June 2007, Pages 1761-1767.

Pruess, K., Xu T., Apps, J., and Garcia, J.: Numerical modeling of aquifer disposal of CO<sub>2</sub>. SPE/EPA/DOE Exploration and Production Environmental Conference held in San Antonio, Texas, 26-28 February 2001.

Raistrick, M., Hutcheon, I., Shevalier, M., Nightingale, M., Johnson, G., Taylor, S., Mayerb, B., Durocher, K., Perkins, E., and Gunter, B.: Carbon dioxide-water-silicate mineral reactions enhance CO<sub>2</sub> storage; evidence from produced fluid measurements and geochemical modeling at modeling at the IEA Weyburn-Midale Project. Energy Procedia: 1, 3149-3155, 2009.

Rapaka, S., Chen, S., Pawar, R. J., Stauffer P. H. and Zhang, D.: Non-modal growth of perturbations in density-driven convection in porous media. Journal of Fluid Mechanics, 609, 285-303, 2008.

Rapaka, S., Pawar, R. J., Stauffer, P. H., Zhang, D., and Chen, S.: Onset of convection over a transient basestate in anisotropic and layered porous media. Journal of Fluid Mechanics, 641: 227-244, 2009.

Riaz, A. Hesse, M., Tchelepi, A., and Orr, F. M. Jr.: Onset of convection in a gravitationally unstable, diffusive boundary layer in porous media, Journal of Fluid Mechanics, 548, 87-111, 2006.

Ringrose, P. and Iding, M.: Assessing the long-term performance of the In Salah CO<sub>2</sub> storage site, 33rd International Geological Congress-Oslo, Aug. 6-14, 2008.

Rumpf B., Nicolaisen H., Ocal C., and Maurer G.: (1994) Solubility of carbon dioxide in aqueous solutions of sodium chloride: experimental results and correlation. J. Sol. Chem. 23, 431-448.

Rutqvist, J. and Tsang, C.F.: A study of caprock hydromechanical changes associated with CO<sub>2</sub>-injection into a brine formation. Environ. Geol. 42 (2002), pp. 296–305.

Rutqvist, J., Vasco, D.W. and Myer L.: Coupled reservoir-geomechanical analysis of CO<sub>2</sub> injection and ground deformations at In Salah Algeria. Int. J. of Greenhouse Gas Control 4 (2010), pp. 225–230.

Rutqvist, J., Wu Y.-S., Tsang, C.F. and Bodvarsson, G.A.: Modeling approach for analysis of coupled multiphase fluid flow heat transfer and deformation in fractured porous rock. Int. J. Rock Mech.and Min. Sci. 39 (2002), pp. 429–442.

Sorensen, J. A., Holubnyak, Y. I., Hawthorne, S. B., Miller, D. J., Eylands, K., Steadman, E. N., and Harju, J. A.: Laboratory and numerical modeling of geochemical reactions in a reservoir used for CO<sub>2</sub> storage. Energy Procedia: 1 3391-3398, 2009.

Spencer, L., Xu, Q., LaPedalina, F., and Weir, G., Site characterization of the Otway basin storage pilot in Australia. Proceeding of the 8th International Conference on Greenhouse Gas Control technologies, 19-22 June 2006, Trondheim, Norway.

Spycher, N., Pruess, K., and Ennis-King, J.:  $CO_2$ -H<sub>2</sub>O mixtures in the geological sequestration of  $CO_2$ . I. Assessment and calculation of mutual solubilities from 12 to 100°C and up to 600 bar. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta (2003), 67(16), 3015–3031.

Spycher, N. and Pruess., K.:  $CO_2$ -H<sub>2</sub>O mixtures in the geological sequestration of CO<sub>2</sub>. II. Partitioning in chloride brines at 12-100°C and up to 600 bar. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta (2005), 69(13), 3309–3320.

Stalker, L., Boreham, C., Underschultz, J., Freifeld, B., Perkins, E., Schacht, U. and Sharma, S.: Geochemical monitoring at the CO2CRC Otway Project: tracer injection and reservoir fluid acquisition, Energy Procedia 1:2119-2125 (2009).

Steefel, C. I. and Lasaga, A. C. 1994.: A coupled model for transport of multiple chemical species and kinetic precipitation/dissolution reactions with application to reactive flow in single phase hydrothermal systems. American Journal of Science, 294(5), 529-592.

Terzaghi, K.: The shearing resistance of saturated soils and the angle between the planes of shear. Proceedings of international conference on soil mechanics and foundation engineering, Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA, USA, 1936, pp. 54-56.

Thibeau, S., Chiquet, P., Mouronval, G., and Lescanne, M.: Geochemical assessment of the injection of CO<sub>2</sub> into Rousse depleted gas reservoir. Energy Procedia: 1, 3383-3390, 2009.

Todesco, M., Rutqvist, J., Pruess, K. and Oldenburg, C.: SGP-TR-173, multiphase fluid circulation and ground deformation: a new perspective on bradyseismic activity at the Phlegrean fields (Italy). Proceedings Twenty Eighth Workshop on Geothermal Reservoir Engineering, January 27-29, 2003, Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA, 2003.

van der Meer, L. G. H.: The conditions limiting CO<sub>2</sub> storage in aquifers. Ener. Convers. Mgmt., (1993) 34 (9-11), 959–966.

van der Meer, L. G. H.: The CO<sub>2</sub> storage efficiency of aquifers. Ener. Convers. Mgmt. (1995), 36 (6-9), 513-518.

van Genuchten, M.Th.: A closed-form equation for predicting the hydraulic conductivity of unsaturated soils. Soil Sci. Soc. 44(1980), pp. 892-898.

Verma, A., and Pruess, K.: Thermohydrological conditions and silica redistribution near highlevel nuclear wastes emplaced in saturated geological formations. J. Geophys. Res. 93 (1988), pp. 1159-1173.

Vinsome, P.K.W. and Westerveld, J. : A simple method for predicting cap and base rock heat losses in thermal reservoir simulators, J. Canadian Pet. Tech., 19 (3), 87–90, July-September 1980.

Warren, J.E. and Root, P.J.: The behavior of naturally fractured reservoirs. Society of Petroleum Engineers Journal, Transactions AIME 228, September 1963, pp. 245-255.

Weir, G. J., *et al.*: Reservoir storage and contaminant of greenhouse gases, Transport in porous media (1996), 23, 37-60.

Wellman, T. P., Grigg, R. B., McPherson, B. J., Svec, R. K., and Lichtner, P. C.: 2003. Evaluation of CO<sub>2</sub>-brine-reservoir rock interaction with laboratory flow tests and reactive transport modeling. SPE 80228 International Symposium on Oilfeld Chemistry, 5-7 February 2003, Houston, Texas.

White, S., Weir, G., and Kissling, W.: 2002. Numerical simulation of CO2 sequestration in natural  $CO_2$  reservoirs on the Colorado Plateau. Proceedings of the First National Conference on Carbon Sequestration, Washington, DC, May 2001.

White, S., Allis, R., Moore, J., Chidsey, T., Morgan, C., Gwynn, W., and Adams, M.: 1995. Natural CO<sub>2</sub> reservoirs on the Colorado plateau and southern Rocky Mountains, USA, a numerical model. Proc. Greenhouse Gas Control Technologies 6th Conference, Kyoto, Japan, Oct. 2002.

White, S. P., Allis, R., Moore, J., Chidsey, T., Morgan, C., Gwynn, W., Adams, M.: Simulation of reactive transport of injected CO<sub>2</sub> on the Colorado Plateau, Utah, USA. Chemical Geology 217, 387-405, 2005.

Whittaker, S.G.: (2005): Geological characterization of the Weyburn field for geological storage of CO<sub>2</sub>: Summary of phase I results of the IEA GHG Weyburn CO<sub>2</sub> monitoring and storage project; in Summary of Investigations 2005, Volume 1, Saskatchewan Geological Survey, Sask. Industry Resources, Misc. Rep. 2005-4.1, CD-ROM, Paper A-1, 6p.

Wilson, R.K. and Aifantis, E.C.: On the theory of consolidation with double porosity. Int. J. Eng. Sci. 20:9 (1982), pp. 1009-1035.

Wigand, M., Carey, J.W., Chutt, H., Spangenberg, E., and Erzinger, J.: Geochemical effects of  $CO_2$  sequestration in sandstone under simulated simulated in situ conditions of deep saline aquifers. Applied Geochemistry: 23, 2735-2745, 2008.

Winterfeld, P.H. and Wu, Y.-S.: Simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine aquifers with geomechanical coupling, in *Computational models for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration and compressed air energy storage*," chapter 8, edited by J. Bundschuh and R. Al-Khoury, CRC Press, 2014.

Wolery, T. J.: 1992. EQ3/6: A software package for geochemical modeling of aqueous systems: Package overview and installation guide (version 7.0). Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory Livermore, CA.

Wong, S., Gunter, W.D. and Gale, J.: Site ranking for CO<sub>2</sub>-enhanced coalbed methane demonstration pilots, Proceedings of the 5th International Conference on GHG Control Technologies, Cairns, Australia, (Editors: Williams, D., Durie, B., McMullan, P., Paulson, C., Smith, A.) CSIRO Publishing, 531-536 (2001).

Wu, Y.-S. and Pruess, K.: A multiple-porosity method for simulation of naturally fractured petroleum reservoirs, SPE Reservoir Engineering, 3 (1988), 327-336.

Wu, Y. S., Liu, H. H. and Bodvarsson, G. S.: A triple-continuum approach for modeling flow and transport processes in fractured rock, Journal of Contaminant Hydrology, 73 (2004a), 145-179.

Wu, Y. S., Pan L., and Pruess, K.: A physically based approach for modeling multiphase fracture-matrix interaction in fractured porous media, Advances in Water Resources, Vol. 27 (2004b), 875-887.

Wu, Y.-S. and Qin, G.: A general numerical approach for modeling multiphase flow and transport in fractured porous media, Communications in Computational Physics, Vol. 6, No. 1, pp.85-108, 2009.

Xu, T. and Pruess, K. 1998.: Coupled modeling of non-isothermal multiphase flow, solute transport and reactive chemistry in porous and fractured media: 1. Model development and validation. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, California.

Xu, T. and Pruess, K. 1999.: An improved equilibrium-kinetics speciation algorithm for redox reactions in variably saturated subsurface flow systems. Computers and Geosciences, 25(6), 655-666.

Xu, T., Apps, J. A., and Pruess, K.: Analysis of mineral trapping for CO<sub>2</sub> disposal in deep aquifers. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory Report LBNL-46992, Berkeley, California, 2001.

Xu, T., Apps, J. A., and Pruess, K.: Reactive geochemical transport simulation to study mineral trapping for  $CO_2$  disposal in deep arenaceous formations. Journal of Geophysical Research: 108, B2, 2003.

Xu, T., Apps, J. A., and Pruess, K.: Numerical simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> disposal by mineral trapping in deep aquifers. Applied Geochemistry: 19, 917-936, 2004a.

Xu, T., Apps, J. A., Pruess, K., and Yamamoto, H.: Injection of CO<sub>2</sub> with H<sub>2</sub>S and SO<sub>2</sub> and subsequent mineral trapping in sandstone-shale formation. Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory Report LBNL-57426, Berkeley, California, 2004b.

Xu, X., Chen, S., and Zhang, D.: Convective stability analysis of the long-term storage of carbon dioxide in deep saline aquifers. Advances in Water Resources, 29, 397-407, 2006a.

Xu, T., Sonnenthal, E., Spycher, N., and Pruess, K.: 2006b. TOUGHREACT-a simulation program for non-isothermal multiphase reactive geochemical transport in variably saturated geologic media: Applications to geothermal injectivity and CO<sub>2</sub> Geological Sequestration. Computers Geosciences, 32(2), 145-165.

Xu, T., Apps, J. A., Pruess, K., and Yamamoto, H.: Numerical modeling of injection and mineral trapping of CO<sub>2</sub> with H<sub>2</sub>S and SO<sub>2</sub> in a sandstone formation. Chemical Geology: 242, 319-346, 2007.

Xu, T., Kharaka, Y. K., Doughty, C., Freifel, B. M., and Daley, T. M. Reactive transport modeling to study changes in water chemistry induced by  $CO_2$  injection at the Frio-I Brine Pilot, Chemical Geology: 271, 153-164, 2010.

Yang, C. and Gu, Y.: Accelerated mass transfer of  $CO_2$  in reservoir brine due to density-driven natural convection at high pressures and elevated temperatures. Ind. Eng. Chem. Res., 45, 2430-2436, 2006.

Zerai, B., Saylor, B. Z., and Matisoff, G. Computer simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> trapped through mineral precipitation in the Rose Run Sandstone, Ohio. Applied Geochemistry: 21, 223-240, 2006.

Zhang, K., Doughty, C., Wu, Y.-S., and Pruess K.: Efficient parallel simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> geologic sequestration in saline aquifers. 2007 SPE Reservoir Simulation Symposium held in Houston, Texas, U.S.A., 26-28 February 2007.

Zhang, K., Wu, Y.-S. and Pruess, K.: User's guide for TOUGH2-MP - a massively parallel version of the TOUGH2 code. Report LBNL-315E, Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, CA, USA, 2008.

Zimmerman, R.W.: Compressibility of sandstones. Elsevier, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 1991.

Zwingmann, N., Mito, S., Sorai, M., Ohsumi, T.: 2005 - Pre-injection characterization and evaluation of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration potential in the Haizume Formation, Niigata Basin, Japan.

## Appendix A: Publications/Presentations Generated from this Research

Huang, Z., Winterfeld, P. H., Wu, Y.-S.: Parallel fully-coupled hydromechanical modeling of CO<sub>2</sub> leakage through fluid-driven fracture zones during injection, submitted to International Journal of Green House Gas Control.

Pruess, K.: Modeling CO<sub>2</sub> leakage scenarios, including transitions between super- and subcritical conditions, and phase change between liquid and gaseous CO<sub>2</sub>, Energy Procedia, Volume 4, 2011, Pages 3754–3761.

Winterfeld, P. H., Wu, Y.-S.: Numerical simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in saline aquifers with geomechanical effects, 10th Annual Conference on Carbon Capture and Sequestration, May 2-5, 2011, in Pittsburgh, PA.

Winterfeld, P. H., Wu, Y.-S.: SPE 141514 - Parallel simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration with rock deformation in zaline aquifers, 2011 SPE Reservoir Simulation Symposium held 21-23 February, 2011, in The Woodlands, TX.

Winterfeld, P. H., Wu, Y.-S.: A novel fully coupled geomechanical model for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in fractured and porous brine aquifers, XIX International Conference on Computational Methods in Water Resources (CMWR 2012), held at the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champagne, June 17-22, 2012.

Winterfeld, P. H., Wu, Y.-S., Pruess, K., and Oldenburg, C.: Development of advanced thermalhydrological-mechanical model for CO<sub>2</sub> storage in porous and fractured saline aquifers, TOUGH Symposium 2012, held at Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, California, September 17-19, 2012.

Winterfeld, P.H. and Y.S. Wu: Simulation of CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine aquifers with geomechanical coupling, in *Computational models for CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration and compressed air energy storage*," chapter 8, edited by J. Bundschuh and R. Al-Khoury, CRC Press, 2014.

Winterfeld, P. H. and Wu, Y.-S.: Simulation of THM processes in fractured reservoirs, in *Dynamics of fluids and transport in fractured-porous media*, AGU Books, to be published.

Wu, Y.-S., Xiong, Y., Zhang, R., and Winterfeld, P. H.: Simulation of coupled thermalhydrological-mechanical-chemical (THMC) processes in porous media," presented at the XX International Conference on Computational Methods in Water Resources (CMWR 2014), June 10-13, 2014, at the University of Stuttgart, Germany.

Zhang, R., Yin, X., Winterfeld, P. H. and Wu, Y.-S.: A fully coupled model of nonisothermal multiphase flow, geomechanics, and chemistry during CO<sub>2</sub> sequestration in brine aquifers, TOUGH Symposium 2012, held at Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory, Berkeley, California, September 17-19, 2012.

Zhang, R., Yin, X., Wu, Y.-S., and Winterfeld, P. H.: A fully coupled model of nonisothermal multiphase flow, solute transport and reactive chemistry in porous media, SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition held in San Antonio, Texas, USA, 8-10 October 2012.

## **Appendix B: Participating Researchers/Students**

Colorado School of Mines:

- Yu-Shu Wu, Professor, Petroleum Engineering
- Xiaolong Yin, Assistant Professor, Petroleum Engineering
- Philip H. Winterfeld, Research Associate Professor, Petroleum Engineering
- Ronglei Zhang, Ph. D. Student, Petroleum Engineering

Colorado School of Mines/University of California, Riverside:

• Zizhong Chen

Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory:

- Karsten Pruess
- Curt Oldenburg